## The MATH Library

(Version alpha 3-22-2002)

César A. R. Crusius

March 22, 2002 at 23:26

1. Introduction. The MATH library is my attempt to finally bring to the world the wonderful sensation of the power of object-oriented programming to numerical mathematics. The library is completely templatized, so that adding a new type of matrix (such as a tridiagonal matrix) should not only be straightforward but old functions could still be used with it. The library can in principle be used with any system with STL installed and a C++ compiler that supports templates.

When designing the library I had the following philosophy in mind: when you deal with matrices, that's what you do. You deal with matrices. A matrix is a matrix, and only after that it is a sparse matrix, a symmetric matrix and so on. So the first decision I made was to provide only *one* matrix type, the **matrix** class. This is, in my opinion, the correct, intuitive and natural thing to do, and many libraries fail in this point because if you want to add a new matrix type you will actually have to define a whole new matrix class (when in fact you want to redefine the structure or whatever).

Next, I was concerned about an interesting issue: in most matrix libraries, there is *no* distinction between storage and structure. I'll explain better: you can have sparse matrices, or you can have symmetric matrices. But can you have sparse symmetric matrices? The concepts are really independent, but most systems do not address this issue correctly: we have to separate these concepts, and that's what I did. A matrix has as attributes a *structure* and a *storage method*. I'll now explain both in more detail:

- The *storage method* of a matrix determines how the entries are stored and how they are assigned values. For example, in a sparse matrix assigning an element to zero will actually remove it from memory. Note that this has nothing to do with the matrix structure!
- The *structure* of a matrix determines the relationship between the entries, and decides on *how* the storage will be used. I'll give examples: in a diagonal matrix, for example, the data could be stored in an one-column vector. In a symmetric matrix, the (i,j) element is equal to the (j,i) element, thus the structure can decide that assignment to (i,j) where j > i will actually not take place. Note that the structure does not need to know *how* the entries are stored!

In fact, a symmetric structure actually has to deny assignment to half of the matrix. Consider, for example, the algorithm

$$A(i, j) = 2 * A(i, j).$$

The first assignment works fine, but when you try A(j,i) = 2 \* A(j,i) you will actually be multiplying the new A(i,j) by two, and you'll have a wrong result. Due to this fact, we must make the following assumption: all algorithms compute all the elements of the matrix, unless you really know what you are doing. In the symmetric matrix case, for example, you can specialize an algorithm but you need to be sure which elements the symmetric structure really assign a value.

Now some words about performance. Suppose you are a performance freak, who likes to make nice graphics comparing how long does it take to make an SVD decomposition using various libraries. Probably the MATH library will loose. My main concern is to define a philosophically correct library in the programming sense. There is room, however, for performance improvements: you can always specialize the matrix type you are concerned with. The most obvious case is the dense and unstructured (or symmetric) matrix, which is used everywhere.

Brief remark: actually there are two correct philosophies: the template approach I just described and an "storage and structure hierarchy" approach, which would enable lists of different types of matrices but no specialization. Hence, I was guided by performance in some sense.

2. Basic definitions. The natural place to start is with the basic definitions, which are the the index and the error types: together, they provide us with the necessary tools to begin the longer matrix definition. These basic definitions, along with the matrix definition, are declared in the math.h file. As customary, the definitions are stated in the header file, and some bigger function bodies are defined in math.cc. As will happen with all MATH classes and functions, these definitions are declared inside the math namespace. The next three sections follow a pattern on this document: first we define the beginning of the source and header files, and then proceed with the code.

```
#include "math.h"
          (Big definitions 112)
1
           \langle \mathtt{math.h} \quad 3 \rangle \equiv
       #ifndef __MATH__
2
       \#define __MATH__ 1.0
3
4
          (Include files math 6)
          (Preprocessor definitions)
5
          namespace math {
6
7
             Basic definitions 4
8
             Element definition 65 \
             Structure definition 11
9
             Storage definition 10
10
             Matrix definition 12
11
             Submatrix definition 81
12
13
             Basic algebraic operations 105
             Specializations 106
14
15
             export-waiting big definitions 33
16
       #endif
17
```

4. The first thing we do is to define the C type that will be used for indexing elements of matrices. We define it as an **unsigned int**, which means, for one thing, that you can not define behaviors based on an **index** being negative. Since the entire library is based on the (1,1) origin default, you can always use a zero value as an indicator. Note that an **index** definition already exists – it is defined in the standard library's **string** class. Therefore, a safe use of the type will be **math**::index, even when you declare that you are using namespace **math**.

```
\langle Basic definitions 4\rangle \equiv typedef unsigned int index; See also sections 5, 40, and 82.
```

This code is used in section 3.

18

5. In order to be able to differentiate MATH errors from others, we will define a some classes under the namespace **math**::**error** which we will use to signal anomalies. Our objective here is to provide a consistent and flexible means of passing errors from the library. The first generic error class will contain a string that can be used to describe the cause of the errors. Common errors can be derived from this class.

```
\langle Basic definitions 4 \rangle + \equiv
           namespace error {
19
              class generic {
20
21
                string theMessage;
              public:
22
                 (Generic error class methods 7)
23
                                                  /* A base class it is. */
24
                \mathbf{virtual} \sim \mathbf{generic}() \{ \}
25
              (Predefined error types 9)
26
           }
27
       6. \langle Include files math 6\rangle \equiv
        #include <string>
28
       See also sections 31, 113, and 114.
       This code is used in section 3.
```

7. The **generic** error class is intended to be used in **try-catch** mechanisms, so when something goes wrong you simply **throw** an error. In this way, it doesn't make sense to declare an **error** variable and update it during the program. Hence, the only provided way to modify an **error** is at the time of construction, and we will then need the appropriate constructors: the two defined below are used when the error we want to signal is not predefined. In that case, we create an unknown error with or without an explaining message.

```
⟨Generic error class methods 7⟩ ≡
generic(void):theMessage("unknown") {}
generic(const char *msg):theMessage(msg) {}
See also section 8.
```

This code is used in section 5.

29

30

31

Q Of course you may want to check out the message that was passed

8. Of course, you may want to check out the message that was passed. We provide one method to retreive the friendly error message. Depending on the error type we could even not consider it an error (see, for example, the *det* function).

```
⟨Generic error class methods 7⟩ +≡
const string &message(void) const { return theMessage; }
```

**9.** Next we deal with predefined errors. What we do is to derive some classes that implement common errors.

```
\langle \text{ Predefined error types } 9 \rangle \equiv
          class singular : public generic {
32
          public: singular()
33
             : generic("Matrix<sub>□</sub>is<sub>□</sub>singular<sub>□</sub>to<sub>□</sub>working<sub>□</sub>precision.") {} };
34
          class filerr : public generic {
35
36
          public: filerr()
            : generic("Generic file error.") {} };
37
          class infeasible : public generic {
38
39
          public: infeasible()
             : generic("Problemuisuinfeasible.") { } };
40
          class nonsquare : public generic {
41
42
          public: nonsquare()
             : generic("Matrix⊔should⊔be⊔square") {} };
43
          class nonpositivedef : public generic {
44
45
          public: nonpositivedef()
            : generic("Matrix⊔should⊔be⊔positive⊔definite.") {} };
46
          class dimension : public generic {
47
          public: dimension()
48
             : generic("Wrong∟matrix_dimensions.") {} };
49
          class notimplemented : public generic {
50
          public: notimplemented()
51
             : generic("Feature_not_yet_implemented.") { } };
52
          class maxiterations : public generic {
53
          public: maxiterations()
54
            : \mathbf{generic}(\texttt{"Maximum} \sqcup \mathsf{number} \sqcup \mathsf{of} \sqcup \mathsf{iterations} \sqcup \mathsf{reached."}) \ \{ \ \};
55
          class unboundedbelow: public generic {
56
          public: unboundedbelow()
57
             : \mathbf{generic}("\mathtt{Problem}_{\sqcup} \mathtt{is}_{\sqcup} \mathtt{unbounded}_{\sqcup} \mathtt{below."}) \ \{ \ \} \ \};
58
          class domain : public generic {
59
          public: domain()
60
             : generic("Domain violation.") {} };
61
          class rankdefficient : public generic {
62
          public: rankdefficient()
63
            : generic("Matrix, is, rank, defficient.") { } };
64
```

This code is used in section 5.

```
\langle Storage definition 10\rangle \equiv
65
          template\langle class T \rangle
          class dense {
66
             typedef T element_type;
67
             (Dense storage internal variables 28)
68
          public:
69
70
             (Dense storage methods 29)
71
          };
       This code is used in section 3.
       11. \langle Structure definition 11\rangle
          template \langle class T \rangle
72
73
          class unstructured {
             typedef T element_type;
74
75
             (Unstructured structure methods 27)
76
          };
77
       This code is used in section 3.
```

12. Now to the user's matrix type. The first thing we need to realize is that we will inevitably need to return matrices from some functions (it suffices to think of a function to return the identity matrix). In order to minimize the overhead in passing matrices around, we separate the matrix representation from the matrix handle. The **matrix** type is, then, a handle to a representation that can be shared among many matrices. An assignment of the type A = B will be equivalent to "matrix A will share matrix B representation." Of course, we need to be careful to not modify matrices we don't want to. For example, A(1,1) = 1 can not modify B. As we proceed we will take care of all these cases.

```
#define matrix_simple_template
78
                   class T \leftarrow double,
79
                   template\langle class \rangle class structure \leftarrow unstructured,
                   template\langle class \rangle \ class \ storage \leftarrow dense
80
        \langle Matrix definition 12 \rangle \equiv
           (Matrix representation definition 13)
81
           template \langle matrix\_simple\_template \rangle
82
83
           class matrix {
           public:
84
              (Matrix internal types 14)
85
           private:
86
              (Matrix internal variables 15)
87
88
              (Matrix methods 19)
89
90
       This code is used in section 3.
```

13. As aligned before, a matrix is simply a handle to a matrix representation. It is the representation who holds the storage and has the structure information. Hence, a representation is a template of all of them.

```
⟨ Matrix representation definition 13⟩ ≡
91     template⟨matrix_simple_template⟩
92     class representation {
93         typedef T element_type;
94         ⟨ Matrix representation internal variables 17⟩
95         public:
96         ⟨ Matrix representation methods 18⟩
97     };
```

This code is used in section 12.

14. A matrix knows its representation through a pointer to a it. In this way a single representation can be shared among various matrices. This also means that it is the matrix itself who must coordinate creation of new representations and destruction of them, as we shall see later.

```
\langle Matrix internal types 14 \rangle \equiv
```

```
typedef representation \langle T, structure, storage \rangle rep_type;
```

See also sections 16 and 88.

98

99

100

101102

103

104

This code is used in section 12.

**15.** ⟨Matrix internal variables 15⟩ ≡ rep\_type \*theRepresentation;

This code is used in section 12.

**16.** Before going on, we note that we must have a means to obtain the type of elements, structure and storage of a matrix. Since a matrix is a template, we provide a means of accessing the type of the matrix as internal types in the same way as the Standard Template Library does.

```
⟨Matrix internal types 14⟩ +≡
typedef T element_type;
typedef storage⟨T⟩ storage_type;
typedef structure⟨T⟩ structure_type;
typedef matrix⟨T, structure, storage⟩ matrix_type;
```

17. Now back to business. Since the representation is the owner of the storage, it is the representation who holds the size of the matrix, not the **matrix** type.

```
\langle \, \text{Matrix representation internal variables 17} \, \rangle \equiv \\ \quad \text{index } num\_rows, \ num\_cols;
```

See also sections 20, 21, and 50.

This code is used in section 13.

 $storage\langle T \rangle *theStorage;$  $structure\langle T \rangle *theStructure;$ 

111

112

```
\langle Matrix representation methods 18 \rangle \equiv
           index &rows(void) { return num_rows; }
105
           index &cols(void) { return num_cols; }
106
           index rows(void) const { return num_rows; }
107
           index cols(void) const { return num_cols; }
108
        See also sections 22, 25, 26, 47, 51, 54, 59, 63, 72, and 77.
        This code is used in section 13.
             \langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle \equiv
           index rows(void) const { return (theRepresentation? theRepresentation¬rows():0); }
109
           index cols(void) const { return (the Representation? the Representation ¬cols():0); }
110
        See also sections 23, 24, 34, 36, 37, 38, 42, 44, 45, 46, 53, 57, 58, 62, 71, 73, 74, 76, 89, 92, 94, 96, 99, 102, 108, and 115.
        This code is used in section 12.
        20. Also, as aligned before, it is the representation who has the storage and structure information. It will
        be the job of the representation to use them appropriately.
        \langle Matrix representation internal variables 17\rangle + \equiv
```

114

115

116

117 118

119

120

121

122

123124

125 126 21. Creating and copying a matrix. We can now begin to handle the ways in which a representation is handled by the matrix, and we will start by the ways a matrix is created. First, we need to know how many matrices are sharing a single representation. Obviously, this information can only be kept by the representation itself, and the matrix must be able to retreive this information.

```
\langle Matrix representation internal variables 17\rangle += int num\_instances;
```

22. When a matrix is emptied or some operation modifies it, it is often the case that a matrix will need to create a new representation. On the other hand, copying matrices simply means incrementing the number of shared instances of some representation. Since it is the matrix who deals with this protocol, we return a reference to the number of instances so that a matrix can modify it itself.

```
⟨ Matrix representation methods 18⟩ +≡
inline int &instances(void) { return num_instances; }
```

23. Let us then enable a matrix to be created. The default constructor should create an empty matrix, and the dimension constructor creates a fresh representation.

```
\langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle +\equiv 

matrix(void): the Representation(0) \{ \}
```

**24.**  $\langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv$ 

25. A representation is never empty. It is always created with dimensions, in the way you just saw. In order to really forbid the empty representation creation we define a default constructor which trhows an error.

```
⟨ Matrix representation methods 18⟩ +≡
   representation(void)
  {
     throw error::generic("Cannot⊔instantiate⊔empty⊔matrix⊔representation!");
   }
```

**26.** It is the job of the representation constructor to create the structure and the storage. By defining the representation constructor we begin, then, to definite the communication protocol between storages and structures. We will explain the protocol by defining the **dense** and **unstructured** classes.

```
\langle \text{Matrix representation methods 18} \rangle +\equiv \\ \textbf{representation(index } rows, \textbf{index } cols) : num\_rows(rows), num\_cols(cols), num\_instances(1) \\ 128 \qquad \{ \\ the Structure \leftarrow \textbf{new structure} \langle \textbf{element\_type} \rangle (\&rows, \&cols); \\ 130 \qquad the Storage \leftarrow \textbf{new storage} \langle \textbf{element\_type} \rangle (rows, cols); \\ 131 \qquad \}
```

27. The first part of the protocol consists in creating a matrix with enough storage for its elements. A symmetric matrix, for example, does not need to store rows \* cols elements. Hence we first create the structure, and rely on the constructor to modify its arguments so that the a posteriori storage creation works accordingly. For the unstructured type, however, we don't need to modify the arguments.

```
⟨Unstructured structure methods 27⟩ ≡ unstructured(index *, index *) {}
See also sections 49, 60, and 78.
This code is used in section 11.
```

 $\langle$  Dense storage internal variables 28  $\rangle \equiv$ 

132

144

28. Having now the correct dimensions of the matrix we can create the storage. Let's do it for the dense case. A dense matrix is stored as a vector in *elements* by columns, that is, the first elements are from the first column and so on. The index to the first element of a column is indexed in *data*. Later on this can appear to be unintuitive, but this scheme saves memory for vectors, when there is only one element in *data*, and also it will facilitate the build of a LAPACK interface. We will also allow the storage to have storage for more rows and columns than what is needed. This will be very useful when resizing.

```
element_type *elements;
element_type **data;
index num_rows, num_cols;
index max_rows, max_cols;
This code is used in section 10.

29. We define, as usual, a default constructor to zero everything.

\( \lambda \text{Dense storage methods } 29 \rangle \equiv \text{dense}():elements(0), data(0), num_rows(0), num_cols(0), max_rows(0), max_cols(0) \} \)
See also sections 30, 32, 48, 52, 55, 56, 61, 64, 75, and 79.

This code is used in section 10.
```

**30.** Now to the useful dense constructor. We set the initial array values to zero, and we use *memset* for doing this. One could argue that we should do a loop and assign **element\_type**(0) to each element, but let's get real... Since the task of initializing the data is also useful outside the constructor, we define an *init* method to be used for initialization and call it from the constructor.

32. The *init* function allocates space and initialize the data pointers, but leaves the data contents unchanged. The method will be constructed so that it can be used to resize the data if the number of elements remains the same (if they are not, you'll have segfault somewhere later). The trick in this method is that the vectors are initialized in a way such that the (1,1) origin standard works, that is, data[1][1] is the first element of the matrix. The only catch is that, due to the way the data is stored, the element A(i,j) is stored in data[j][i].

```
\langle \text{ Dense storage methods } 29 \rangle +\equiv  void init(\text{const index } \& rows, \text{const index } \& cols);
```

```
\langle \mathbf{export}\text{-waiting big definitions } 33 \rangle \equiv
                       template \langle class T \rangle void dense \langle T \rangle :: init(const index \& rows, const index \& cols)
145
146
                            num\_rows \leftarrow max\_rows \leftarrow rows;
147
                            num\_cols \leftarrow max\_cols \leftarrow cols;
148
                           if (\neg elements) elements \leftarrow \mathbf{new} \mathbf{element\_type}[rows * cols];
149
                           if (data) delete [] ++ data;
150
                            data \leftarrow \mathbf{new} \ \mathbf{element\_type}*[cols];
151
                           for (index i \leftarrow 0; i < cols; ++i) data[i] \leftarrow elements + i * rows - 1;
152
                            data --;
153
                       }
154
                See also sections 35, 39, 43, and 80.
                This code is used in section 3.
                           Voilà! We are now able to create an empty matrix and a matrix filled with zeros. Sometimes, however,
                it is useful to create a matrix filled with some specified value. We provide a method to fill a matrix with a
                specified value and a constructor to do the same thing.
                \langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
                       void fillwith(const element_type &value);
155
                           \langle \mathbf{export}\text{-waiting big definitions } 33 \rangle + \equiv
                      template \langle matrix\_simple\_template \rangle void matrix \langle T, structure, storage \rangle :: fillwith (const_element_type_storage) 
156
                                         &value)
157
                           for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq rows(); i \leftrightarrow 1)
158
                                for (index j \leftarrow 1; j < cols(); j \leftrightarrow 1) the Representation \neg set(i, j, value);
159
                       }
160
                36.
                             \langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
                       matrix(const index rows, const index cols, const element_type & value)
161
162
                  #ifdef __MATH_INSANE_DEBUG__
163
                            cout \ll "[math]:_|matrix(" \ll rows \ll ',' \ll cols \ll ',' \ll value \ll ")_|oldrep=" \ll
164
                                    the Representation;
                  #endif
165
                            theRepresentation \leftarrow \mathbf{new} \ \mathbf{rep\_type}(rows, cols);
166
                           fillwith (value);
167
                  #ifdef __MATH_INSANE_DEBUG__
168
                            cout \ll "\_newrep=" \ll the Representation \ll '\n';
169
                  #endif
170
171
                       }
                37. Next we define the copy constructor. As noted before, the only thing we need to do is to share the
                representation and update the number of shared instances.
                \langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
                       matrix(const matrix_type & source)
172
173
174
                           if (source.theRepresentation) source.theRepresentation→instances()++;
                           the Representation \leftarrow source.the Representation;
175
                       }
176
```

185

186

**38.** Now we have all the basic constructors we need. The next step is to define the copy operations, which are very similar. In order to be able to do that we define a method that reinitializes a matrix to a given size. This method is like a constructor, but it takes into account the fact that the matrix can already have a representation. If it has one and its not shared and it has the same dimensions we don't need to do anything. In the other case we need to create a new representation anyway, taking care of the old one (the deletion of a representation is the topic of the next section, but the details are not necessary here).

```
\langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv void init(const index num\_rows, const index num\_cols);
```

**40.** We are now able to define the assignment operator. In our context the task is a simple matter of using the same representation. Sometimes, however, this is not what we want: we want the contents copied and a new representation created. This normally occurs in numerical code where all matrices are modified almost instantly anyway. We provide a way to control the behavior of the assignment operator through the global fast\_assignment. If fast\_assignment is true, then the assignment operator uses the faster but memorywise expensive copyfrom method, to be defined later.

```
\langle \text{ Basic definitions } 4 \rangle +\equiv  extern bool fast_assignment;
```

- **41. bool math** ::  $fast\_assignment \leftarrow false$ ;
- **42.** Now to the method itself. In case fast-assignment is false, we share the representation, the only catch being that we need to avoid confusions when making ridiculous things like A = A.

```
⟨Matrix methods 19⟩ +≡
matrix_type &operator←(const matrix_type &source);
```

43.  $\langle$  export-waiting big definitions 33 $\rangle + \equiv$  $template \langle matrix\_simple\_template \rangle matrix \langle T, structure, storage \rangle :: matrix\_type$ 187 &matrix $\langle T, structure, storage \rangle$ ::operator $\leftarrow$ (const matrix\_type &source) 188 if (fast\_assignment) return copyfrom(source); 189 **if** (source.theRepresentation) source.theRepresentation¬instances()++; 190 if  $(the Representation \land --the Representation \neg instances() \equiv 0)$  delete the Representation;191  $the Representation \leftarrow source.the Representation;$ 192 return \*this: 193 194 }

**44.** We may also want to perform assignments with different types of source matrices. In that case the only way is to copy all elements, one by one. This method requires the operator (), which retreives an element from a matrix, and the methods *set*, which assigns a value to a particular element. The details are irrelevant for now.

```
\#define matrix\_template(M)
                    class T \#\#M,
195
                    template \langle class \rangle class STR##M,
196
                    template \langle class \rangle class ST0##M
197
         \langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
            \mathbf{template} \langle matrix\_template(A) \rangle
198
            matrix\_type \& operator \leftarrow (const \ matrix \langle TA, STRA, STOA \rangle \& source)
199
200
               init(source.rows(), source.cols());
201
               index i, j;
202
               for (i \leftarrow 1; i < rows(); ++i)
203
                  for (j \leftarrow 1; j \leq cols(); ++j) \ set(i, j, source(i, j));
204
205
               return *this;
            }
206
              \langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
            template \langle matrix\_template(A) \rangle
207
            matrix(const matrix(TA,STRA,STOA) & source):theRepresentation(0)
208
            \{ *this \leftarrow source; \}
209
```

46. On ocasion we may want to copy a matrix without sharing the representation (for example, when we know the matrix will be modified right away so that a new representation will be created anyway if we share the instance). So here's what we do: if we don't have a representation yet we simply create a new one. If we do have one and it has the same dimensions (we know it has the same type), we assign a copy of the old one to it (this can be very fast). If none of this happens we behave just like the assignment operator, except we always will create a new representation.

```
\langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
            matrix_type &copyfrom(const matrix_type &source)
210
211
              if (the Representation \equiv source. the Representation) return *this;
212
               if (the Representation \land the Representation \neg instances() \equiv 1 \land rows() \equiv source.rows() \land cols() \equiv
213
                      source.cols()) {
                 *theRepresentation \leftarrow *(source.theRepresentation);
214
                 return *this;
215
216
              if (the Representation \land --the Representation \neg instances() \equiv 0) delete the Representation;
217
               the Representation \leftarrow \mathbf{new} \ \mathbf{rep\_type}(*(source.the Representation));
218
               return *this;
219
            }
220
```

 $\langle Matrix representation methods 18 \rangle + \equiv$ 

47. In order to define the *copyfrom* method we created a representation based on an existing one. We will need to do the same thing when setting elements. For this task we will define a copy representation constructor, which in turn will require copy constructors for both the dense and unstructured classes.

```
representation(const representation & source)
221
222
               theStructure \leftarrow \mathbf{new} \ \mathbf{structure} \langle \mathbf{T} \rangle (*(source.theStructure));
223
               theStorage \leftarrow \mathbf{new} \ \mathbf{storage} \langle \mathbf{T} \rangle (*(source.theStorage));
224
               num\_instances \leftarrow 1;
225
               num\_rows \leftarrow source.rows();
226
               num\_cols \leftarrow source.cols();
227
228
            }
         48. \langle \text{ Dense storage methods } 29 \rangle + \equiv
            dense(const dense & source)
229
            : elements(0), data(0) 
230
               init(source.num_rows, source.num_cols);
231
232
               memcpy(elements, source.elements, num\_rows * num\_cols * sizeof(element\_type));
233
            }
               \langle Unstructured structure methods 27\rangle + \equiv
            unstructured (const unstructured &) { }
234
               We also used assignment operators in copyfrom. In order to simplify things, we only allow assignment
```

operators to be called when the sources have the same dimensions. This may change in the future, but for now it's good enough (since the user will never use these operators directly).

 $\langle$  Matrix representation internal variables 17 $\rangle + \equiv$ 

235

typedef representation  $\langle T, structure, storage \rangle$  rep\_type;

```
51. \langle Matrix representation methods 18\rangle + \equiv
           rep\_type \& operator \leftarrow (const rep\_type \& source)
236
237
              if (source.rows() \neq rows() \vee source.cols() \neq cols())
238
               throw error::generic("Can_only_assign_representation_to_same_dimension.");
239
              *theStorage \leftarrow *(source.theStorage);
              *theStructure \leftarrow *(source.theStructure);
240
              return *this;
241
           }
242
```

**52.** Here we see why *copyfrom* can be much faster: the assignment operator for the representation didn't involve any memory allocation. Now, the **dense** assignment operator will not allocate memory too, and will use an optimized routine for copying elements. We can not use a single memcpy because there is a possibility that the source storage has a different size of allocated memory (because of max\_rows and max\_cols).

```
\langle \text{ Dense storage methods } 29 \rangle + \equiv
              \operatorname{dense}\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle \& \operatorname{operator} \leftarrow (\operatorname{const} \operatorname{dense}\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle \& \operatorname{source})
243
244
                 if (source.num\_rows < num\_rows \lor source.num\_cols < num\_cols)
245
                    throw error::generic("Incompatible, dimension, in, dense, assignment, operator.");
                 for (index i \leftarrow 1; i < num\_cols; ++i)
246
                    memcpy(data[i] + 1, source.data[i] + 1, num\_rows * sizeof(element\_type));
247
                 return *this;
              }
248
```

**53. Destroying a matrix.** Destroying a matrix would be very simple if it wasn't for the fact that another matrix can be sharing the same representation. This fact makes the destruction of a matrix to be downgraded to the "simple" category. When a matrix is deleted, it can happen that there is another matrix sharing the representation. We only delete the representation if we are the sole matrix using it. If we are not, we only update the number of matrices sharing the representation.

**54.** Deleting a representation requires a representation destructor. If you try to delete a representation that is still shared MATH gives you a little piece of its mind.

55. Of course, deleting a representation requires structure and storage destructors. For the unstructured class we rely on the default destructor, since the class is empty anyway. For the dense storage it is convenient, like with the constructing part, to define an auxiliary method and to call it within the destructor. In deleting the data vector we only have to keep in mind that it was adjusted during creation to obey the (1,1) origin default.

```
\langle Dense storage methods 29\rangle + \equiv
             \simdense() { destroy(); }
262
                \langle \text{ Dense storage methods } 29 \rangle + \equiv
             void destroy(void)
263
264
                if (elements) delete[] elements;
265
                if (data) delete [] ++ data;
266
                elements \leftarrow 0;
267
268
                data \leftarrow 0:
             }
269
```

**61.**  $\langle$  Dense storage methods 29 $\rangle + \equiv$ 

{ return  $data[col][row] \leftarrow value;$  }

288 289  $\langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv$ 

**57. Setting and getting elements.** At this point we are able to create and destroy matrices. The next step is to allow the user to set individual elements. Since the behavior of the *set* operation depends heavily on the matrix structure, the matrix type calls the representation to perform the structure-storage communication protocol. The matrix must, however, create a new representation in case the current one is shared, otherwise we will modify other matrices too. Since this operation is useful in other situations (for example when calling LAPACK routines), we define a method that creates a new representation for the matrix if necessary.

```
void detach(void)
270
271
             if (the Representation \land the Representation \neg instances() > 1) {
272
273
                -- the Representation \neg instances():
                the Representation \leftarrow \mathbf{new} \ \mathbf{rep\_type}(*the Representation);
274
275
           }
276
        58. We are now in position to set an element.
        \langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
           element_type set(index row, index col, element_type value)
277
278
             detach();
279
             return the Representation \rightarrow set(row, col, value);
280
281
              The representation performs the handling. First it calls the structure preprocess method. The structure
        will then modify the index accordingly so that a call to the storage set method will modify the correct element.
        If the structure returns false it means the element is not assignable.
        \langle Matrix representation methods 18 \rangle + \equiv
           element_type set(index row, index col, element_type value)
282
283
             if (theStructure¬preprocess(&row, &col)) return theStorage¬set(row, col, value);
284
             return theStorage \neg qet(row, col);
285
286
        60. For unstructured structures the preprocess method is empty, and the dense set method is trivial
        (remember the way the data is stored).
        \langle Unstructured structure methods 27\rangle + \equiv
           bool preprocess(index *, index *) { return true; }
287
```

element\_type  $set(const index \& row, const index \& col, const element_type \& value)$ 

296

297

298

**62.** Wow! We are now able to assign elements to matrices! Next I guess you will want to retreive them, and the most intuitive way to do that is to use the parenthesis operator. for reasons that will become clear, we should not allow the parenthesis operator to be used for assignment, that is, we should not allow something like A(i,j) = 0 (if you insist then yes, we can allow it, but with a huge price in performance). For this reason we do not return a reference, but the value itself. Now to the protocol. Again, a matrix doesn't know how to retreive the value, since the way to retreive something depends on the structure, so it calls the representation get method to do the job. For consistency reasons we also define a get method (to pair the set one).

**63.** The representation needs now to perform the communication again. First it calls the structure *preprocess* to get the right index, and then retreive the element from the storage. Strictly speaking we would need a postprocessing on the element value for Hermitian matrices, but in this feature will wait a little more.

```
⟨ Matrix representation methods 18⟩ +≡
  const element_type get(index row, index col) const
{
    theStructure¬preprocess(&row, &col);
    return theStorage¬get(row, col);
}
```

**64.** A storage get method must return zero if either the column or the row indexes are zero. In this way it is possible for a structure to force certain entries to be zero. In a diagonal matrix, for example, the structure preprocess method should assign zero to the index whenever  $row \neq col$  (and also return false).

```
\langle \text{Dense storage methods 29} \rangle +\equiv \\ \text{const element\_type } get(\text{const index } \&row, \text{const index } \&col) \text{ const} \\ 300 \qquad \{\\ 301 \qquad \text{if } (\neg row \lor \neg col) \text{ return element\_type}(0); \\ 302 \qquad \text{return } data[col][row]; \\ 303 \qquad \}
```

65. Now to the main issue. How to deal with A(i,j) = x? Assigning a zero element to a sparse matrix means deleting it, so we cannot return a reference to the data. There are two possible solutions: either we force the user to use the *set* method or we return a structure. The first solution is cumbersome and hard to read, hence we choose the second, and define a method that will return an *element*. An *element* works like a pointer to a **matrix** entry. When you assign an *element* a value, it calls the matrix *set* method accordingly.

```
\langle \text{ Element definition } 65 \rangle \equiv \\ 304 \qquad \qquad \text{template} \langle \text{class matrix\_type} \rangle \\ 305 \qquad \qquad \text{class element } \{ \\ 306 \qquad \qquad \langle \text{ Matrix element internal variables } 66 \rangle \\ 307 \qquad \qquad \text{public:} \\ 308 \qquad \qquad \langle \text{ Matrix element methods } 68 \rangle \\ 309 \qquad \qquad \};
```

This code is used in section 3.

**66.** An **element** doesn't need to know about it's value, since, as said before, it works like a reference to a particular index of a particular matrix. These are, then the only data an **element** must have.

```
⟨ Matrix element internal variables 66 ⟩ ≡ matrix_type *theMatrix; index i, j;
See also section 67.
```

This code is used in section 65.

310

311

312

315

316

**67.** The numeric type of the element is retreived from the matrix. This type is useful (essential!) for readability in the sequel.

 $\langle Matrix element internal variables 66 \rangle + \equiv$ 

typedef typename matrix\_type::element\_type element\_type;

**68.** An element is not intended to be used as a user variable, and is also not intended to be constructed without arguments. Hence, we define the default constructor to throw an error. An element should be constructed with all necessary arguments, which are the matrix instance and the index to the matrix entry.

```
 \langle \text{Matrix element methods } 68 \rangle \equiv \\ & \textbf{element(void):} the Matrix(0), i(0), j(0) \\ & \textbf{throw error::} \textbf{generic("Default_constructor_of_element_should_not_be_used!");} \\ & \text{See also sections } 69, 70, 95, 97, 100, 103, and 107. \\ & \text{This code is used in section } 65.
```

- 69.  $\langle \text{Matrix element methods } 68 \rangle + \equiv \text{element}(\text{matrix\_type } *mat, \text{const index } row, \text{const index } col): the Matrix(mat), i(row), j(col) \{ \}$
- **70.** As aligned before, the main purpose of an element is to call the *set* method of it's matrix when assigned a value. This will ensure the correct processing of the assignment taking into account the matrix structure.

```
\langle Matrix element methods 68 \rangle + \equiv
```

```
inline element_type operator \leftarrow (const element_type &value) const { return theMatrix¬set(i, j, value); }
```

71. Now we are finally able to define the matrix method to be used for readable assignments. The method returns an element which you can assign a value in a friendly way. We name the method *entry*, so that it makes logical sense. In a program, you would write  $A.entry(1,1) \leftarrow 0$  or something similar. As you can see, that construction is much better, in visual terms, than the equivalent *set* method. Depending on the compiler, however, it is slower. But you can't always get what you want.

```
\langle \text{Matrix methods 19} \rangle +\equiv \\ \text{element} \langle \text{matrix\_type} \rangle \ entry(\text{const index } row, \text{const index } col \leftarrow 1) \\ \text{318} \qquad \{ \\ \text{319} \qquad \text{return element} \langle \text{matrix\_type} \rangle (\text{this}, row, col); \\ \text{320} \qquad \}
```

**72.** By now we are able to set and get individual elements values. It is, however, useful sometimes to be able to have direct access to the storage elements (for example, when interfacing with another library such as LAPACK). In this case, we also *detach* the matrix so that there is no danger of messing around with shared representations.

```
\langle Matrix representation methods 18\rangle += 321 storage\langleT\rangle *storg(void) 322 { return theStorage; }
```

```
\langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
           storage_type *storg(void)
323
324
              detach();
325
             return (the Representation ? the Representation \neg storg(): 0);
326
327
           }
        74. And sometimes we may want the representation too.
        \langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
           rep_type *rep(void)
328
329
330
              detach();
             return theRepresentation;
331
332
```

75. Now that we have a means to get the matrix storage instance, we provide a means to have access to the storage elements themselves. Since this method will be used only when we know which kind of storage we have, it will differ between every storage type, and it is not required for one.

```
⟨Dense storage methods 29⟩ +≡
element_type *memory(void) { return elements; }
```

333

76. Resizing. We define a resize operation as one that changes the size of the matrix but leaves the matrix elements in the same place. You can't assume anything about the value of elements that were not present in the original matrix. A matrix that has no representation simply creates one with the required dimensions. Otherwise, the matrix detaches itself from others and asks for a representation resizing.

```
\langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
            void resize(const index rows, const index cols)
334
            {
335
              if (\neg the Representation) {
336
                 init(rows, cols);
337
                 return:
338
339
340
               detach();
              the Representation \neg resize(rows, cols);
341
            }
342
```

The protocol is as follows: first the representation calls the structure resize method. The structure returns the new dimensions for the storage (or throws a dimension error in case the new size is not compatible). Since the storage will throw an error if the new dimensions are wrong, we can safely update the representation variables before resizing. Next, the representation calls the storage resize method, which will take care of everything else.

```
\langle Matrix representation methods 18 \rangle + \equiv
             void resize(index rows, index cols)
343
344
                num\_rows \leftarrow rows;
345
                num\_cols \leftarrow cols;
346
                theStructure \neg resize(\&rows, \&cols);
347
                theStorage \neg resize(rows, cols);
348
             }
349
```

350

351

- $\langle \text{Unstructured structure methods 27} \rangle + \equiv$ void resize(const index \*, const index \*) const { }
- 79. For the dense resize we will use some tricks. If the matrix can be resized without any memory allocation, then that's what will be done. This means that in those cases the resizing operation is very fast and that it can happen that resizing a big matrix to a small one doesn't free any memory. If we need to allocate memory we make sure that init won't erase the old data. We do that by copying it to another dense instance and zeroing out our data pointers.

```
\langle \text{ Dense storage methods } 29 \rangle + \equiv
   void resize(const index rows, const index cols);
```

```
20 (§80) RESIZING
```

```
\langle \mathbf{export}\text{-waiting big definitions } 33 \rangle + \equiv
             template \langle class T \rangle void dense \langle T \rangle:: resize(const index rows, const index cols)
352
353
                if (cols \leq max\_cols \wedge rows \leq max\_rows) {
354
                   num\_rows \leftarrow rows;
355
356
                   num\_cols \leftarrow cols;
                   return;
357
358
                dense backup(*this);
359
360
                elements \leftarrow 0;
                data \leftarrow 0;
361
                init(rows, cols);
362
                for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq cols \land j \leq backup.num\_cols; ++j)
363
364
                   for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \le rows \land i \le backup.num\_rows; ++i) data[j][i] \leftarrow backup.data[j][i];
365
             }
```

```
\#define submatrix\_template(M) class SUBM \#\#M
        \langle \text{Submatrix definition } 81 \rangle \equiv
           template \langle class T \rangle
366
           class submatrix {
367
              (Submatrix internal variables 83)
368
           public:
369
              (Submatrix methods 85)
370
           };
371
```

82. In order to be able to use submatrices from matrices (recall that the **submatrix** definition comes after the matrix one in the header file) we need to predeclare the submatrix template. We could have done this the other way around, but this way seems to me to be simpler.

```
\langle \text{ Basic definitions } 4 \rangle + \equiv
    template \langle class T \rangle class submatrix;
```

83. In order to be able to use submatrices and matrices with the same template functions, we need to provide a means of detecting the matrix type, element type and so on. For a submatrix, the matrix-type is always unstructured, so we have an additional definition for the matrix the submatrix is referring to.

```
\langle Submatrix internal variables 83\rangle \equiv
   typedef T internal_matrix_type;
   typedef typename T::element_type element_type;
   typedef submatrix\langle T \rangle submatrix_type;
   typedef matrix (element_type, unstructured, dense) matrix_type;
```

See also section 84.

372

373

374

375

376

This code is used in section 81.

This code is used in section 3.

The only data that is needed is a pointer to the matrix and the submatrix corners coordinates.

```
\langle Submatrix internal variables 83\rangle + \equiv
377
           internal_matrix_type *theMatrix;
           index i1, i2, j1, j2;
378
```

85. A submatrix is not intended to be used as a user variable, and is also not intended to be constructed without arguments. This "not intented" is strong, in the sense that no care is currently taken to insure that the pointer a **submatrix** stores is valid in any sense. A submatrix is intended to use immediately as a shorthand for assignments and one-line formula references. We will adopt, for submatrices, a (0,0) internal origin standard in order to make assignments more efficient. One of the annoying things in defining constructors is that we have to use **const\_cast** in some cases (if you are passing a submatrix as a **const** argument of some function you'll need this unless you want your screen filled with "discards const" warnings).

```
\langle \text{Submatrix methods } 85 \rangle \equiv
            submatrix(void): the Matrix(0)
379
            { throw error::generic("Default_constructor_of_submatrix_sould_not_be_used!"); }
380
            submatrix(const internal_matrix_type *mat, const index row1, const index row2, const index
381
                      col1 \leftarrow 1, const index col2 \leftarrow 1)
382
               theMatrix \leftarrow \mathbf{const\_cast} \langle \mathbf{internal\_matrix\_type} * \rangle (mat);
383
               i1 \leftarrow row1 - 1;
384
               i2 \leftarrow row2 - 1;
385
               j1 \leftarrow col1 - 1;
386
               j2 \leftarrow max(col2, col1) - 1;
387
388
        See also sections 86, 87, 90, 91, 93, 98, 101, and 104.
```

bec also becalons 60, 61, 50, 51, 59, 50, 101, and 104.

This code is used in section 81.

**86.** A submatrix can be assigned values in two ways: by a matrix or by a submatrix. We deal with the former first for simplicity.

```
\langle \text{Submatrix methods } 85 \rangle + \equiv
            submatrix(const\ internal\_matrix\_type\ \&mat)\ \{\ *this \leftarrow mat;\ \}
389
           submatrix\_type \& operator \leftarrow (const internal\_matrix\_type \& mat)
390
391
              if (mat.rows() \neq i2 - i1 + 1 \vee mat.cols() \neq j2 - j1 + 1) throw error::dimension();
392
              for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq mat.rows(); ++i)
393
                 for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq mat.cols(); ++j) the Matrix-set (i1 + i, j1 + j, mat.get(i, j));
394
              return *this;
395
            }
396
```

87. For the later type we need to make sure we are protected against things like A(1:2,1:2) = A(2:3,2:3). In order to do that we will need to create a matrix from a submatrix. The thing to be aware of is that in assigning a submatrix to a matrix we don't handle the shared representations anymore, instead we really create a new matrix; but before doing that we need some auxiliary methods from **submatrix** (note that the parenthesis operator obeys the (1,1) origin default). These auxiliary methods, together with others that will be defined later, will make a submatrix behave like a matrix for the basic operations.

```
\langle \text{Submatrix methods } 85 \rangle + \equiv
index rows(\text{void}) const \{ \text{ return } i2 - i1 + 1; \}
398 index cols(\text{void}) const \{ \text{ return } j2 - j1 + 1; \}
399 element_type operator()(const index i, const index j \leftarrow 1) const \{ \text{ return } theMatrix-get}(i1 + i, j1 + j); \}
```

88.  $\langle Matrix internal types 14 \rangle + \equiv$ 

401

typedef submatrix (matrix\_type) submatrix\_type;

421

422

89. The following matrix methods are auxiliary to submatrix, but useful in their own right.

```
\langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
             template \langle class SUBM \rangle matrix \langle const submatrix \langle SUBM \rangle \& mat \rangle
402
             : theRepresentation(0) \{ *this \leftarrow mat; \}
403
             template \langle class SUBM \rangle matrix\_type \& operator \leftarrow (const submatrix \langle SUBM \rangle \& mat)
404
405
                init(mat.rows(), mat.cols());
406
407
                for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq rows(); ++i)
                   for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq cols(); ++j) set(i, j, mat(i, j));
408
                return *this;
409
             }
410
```

90. Now to the last type of assignment. We need to check if our matrix is the same as the one being assigned, and if so if there is intersection between the source and destination elements. If that's the case we create a new matrix based on the source and copy from this matrix.

```
\langle \text{Submatrix methods } 85 \rangle + \equiv
411
            submatrix(const\ submatrix\_type\ \&mat)\ \{\ *this \leftarrow mat;\ \}
            submatrix\_type \& operator \leftarrow (const submatrix\_type \& mat)
412
413
               if (theMatrix \equiv mat.theMatrix \land j1 \leq mat.j2 \land j2 \geq mat.j1 \land i1 \leq mat.i2 \land i2 \geq mat.i1)
414
                  *this \leftarrow internal_matrix_type(mat);
415
               else
416
                  for (index i \leftarrow 1; i < rows(); ++i)
417
                     for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq cols(); ++j) the Matrix \rightarrow set(i1 + i, j1 + j, mat(i, j));
418
               return *this;
419
             }
420
```

**91.** In order to make the submatrix type to resemble a matrix we define set and get methods for it.

```
\langle \text{Submatrix methods } 85 \rangle + \equiv
   void set(index row, index col, element\_type value) \{ the Matrix \neg set(row + i1, col + j1, value); \}
   const element_type get(index\ row, index\ col \leftarrow 1) { return theMatrix \neg get(row + i1, col + j1); }
```

All we need now is a means to get a submatrix from a matrix. Since we can't overload the ':' operator, there is no good way to create one except by a specialized method (instead of overloading the parenthesis operator). We maintain some similarity with MATLAB in the sense that the first two arguments define the row range (and not the upper corner). The default behavior for the last column (which is to get the value of the starting column if that is greater) is handy sometimes. Note that the method is declared **const** even if it isn't. The reason is the same as the one described when defining submatrix constructors.

```
\langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
             submatrix_type subm(\text{const index } row1, \text{const index } row2, \text{const index } col1 \leftarrow 1, \text{index}
423
                       col2 \leftarrow 1) const
             {
424
               col2 \leftarrow max(col2, col1):
425
               return submatrix_type(this, row1, row2, col1, col2);
426
427
             }
```

93. Again we provide a subm method for submatrices in order to make them resemble an actual matrix.  $\langle \text{Submatrix methods } 85 \rangle +\equiv \text{submatrix\_type } subm(\text{const index } row1, \text{const index } row2, \text{const index } col1 \leftarrow 1, \text{index}$ 

```
428 submatrix_type subm(\mathbf{const}\ \mathbf{index}\ row1, \mathbf{const}\ \mathbf{index}\ row2, \mathbf{const}\ \mathbf{index}\ col1 \leftarrow 1, \mathbf{index}\ col2 \leftarrow 1)\ \mathbf{const}
429 {
430 col2 \leftarrow max(col2, col1);
431 \mathbf{return}\ theMatrix \neg subm(i1 + row1, i1 + row2, j1 + col1, j1 + col2);
432 }
```

**94.** Basic algebraic operations. We are now able to define the most basic algebraic operations, such as sum, multiplication by scalars, and so on. We begin the unary operators. The methods are straightforward, but it is not as elegant as one might want it to be because we have to use the *set* and *get* methods: it is possible to use the already defined *entry*, but it could be slower, and the parenthesis operator is very cumbersome to use with a pointer (**this**). A common characteristic of the methods that follow is that the outer loop is generally the loop on the columns. We do that because we know that the unstructured matrix stores by column, so that it is more likely that the computer will make better use of the fast cache memory if we access the matrix this way. Let's start with scalar multiplication:

```
\langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
            matrix_type &operator *= (const T &value)
433
434
              for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq cols(); ++j)
435
                 for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq rows(); ++i) set(i, j, value * get(i, j));
436
              return *this;
437
            }
438
              \langle Matrix element methods 68 \rangle + \equiv
            element_type operator *= (const element_type &val)
439
440
              *this \leftarrow theMatrix \neg get(i, j) * val;
441
              return value();
442
443
            }
              \langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
            matrix_type & operator /= (const T & value)
444
445
              for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq cols(); ++j)
446
                 for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq rows(); ++i) set(i, j, get(i, j)/value);
447
              return *this;
448
            }
449
              \langle Matrix element methods 68 \rangle + \equiv
            element_type operator/=(const element_type &val)
450
451
              *this \leftarrow theMatrix \neg get(i, j)/val;
452
              return value();
453
454
              \langle \text{Submatrix methods } 85 \rangle + \equiv
            submatrix_type &operator/=(const element_type &value) {
455
              for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq cols(); ++j)
456
                 for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq rows(); ++i) the Matrix \rightarrow entry(i1 + i, j1 + j) /= value;
457
              return *this;
458
459
```

**99.** Next we define the unary addition operator. In this case we test for dimension – we assume that the computational overhead in doing this is negligible when compared to the sum itself.

```
\langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
           template \langle submatrix\_template(A) \rangle
460
           matrix_type &operator+=(const SUBMA &value)
461
462
              if (rows() \neq value.rows() \vee cols() \neq value.cols()) throw error::dimension();
463
464
              for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq cols(); ++j)
                for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq rows(); ++i) set(i, j, get(i, j) + value(i, j));
465
              return *this;
466
           }
467
        100.
                \langle Matrix element methods 68 \rangle + \equiv
           element_type operator+=(const element_type &val)
468
469
              *this \leftarrow theMatrix \neg get(i, j) + val;
470
              return value();
471
           }
472
                \langle \text{Submatrix methods } 85 \rangle + \equiv
        101.
           submatrix_type &operator+=(const matrix_type &value)
473
474
              if (value.rows() \neq rows() \lor value.cols() \neq cols()) throw error::dimension();
475
              for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq cols(); ++j)
476
                for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \le rows(); ++i) the Matrix \neg entry(i1+i,j1+j) += value. qet(i,j);
477
              return *this;
478
           }
479
        102. \langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
           template \langle submatrix\_template(A) \rangle
480
           matrix_type &operator -= (const SUBMA &value)
481
482
              if (rows() \neq value.rows() \vee cols() \neq value.cols()) throw error::dimension();
483
484
              for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq cols(); ++j)
                for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq rows(); ++i) set(i, j, get(i, j) - value(i, j));
485
486
              return *this;
           }
487
        103. \langle Matrix element methods 68 \rangle + \equiv
488
           element_type operator = (const element_type &val)
489
              *this \leftarrow theMatrix \neg get(i, j) - val;
490
              return value();
491
492
```

This code is used in section 3.

 $\langle \text{Specializations } 106 \rangle \equiv$ 

106. Basic specializations and utilities. We're done with the matrix type and the basic structure and storage types. You could, using what we wrote, code anything from a matrix multiplication procedure to a complete eigenvalue/eigenvector decomposition. Sometimes, however, it is good to have some utilities predefined, and that's what this section is about.

While writing code for LU decomposition I felt the need for a swap algorithm for matrix elements. Since we cannot use the parenthesis operator for assignment, the STL's swap function doesn't work. The reason is interesting: a swap function must store one value in a temporary variable. The STL's swap assumes that this temporary variable has the same type as the function arguments, so it does something like **element**  $aux \leftarrow A$ . But, for our purposes, this is useless – the value of the element was not saved, only the matrix instance and the index to the entry! Hence, the need to specialize.

```
515
            template \langle class T \rangle inline void swap (element \langle T \rangle x, element \langle T \rangle y)
516
              typename T::element_type aux \leftarrow x.value();
517
              x \leftarrow y.value();
518
              y \leftarrow aux;
519
520
        See also sections 109, 110, 111, and 116.
        This code is used in section 3.
        107. \langle Matrix element methods 68 \rangle + \equiv
            inline element_type value(void) const { return theMatrix \neg get(i, j); }
521
                Of course, I needed a swap method because I wanted to swap rows. This operation is useful in many
        other places, so I add a method that does exactly this.
        \langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
            void swaprows(const index i, const index k)
522
523
              for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq cols(); ++j) swap(entry(i,j), entry(k,j));
524
            }
525
                Comparisons between matrices can be made in two ways: either we compare their elements one by
        one or we check if they share the same representation. The next method does exactly that, and it's useful
        in many contexts (there's a similar function in Lisp, for example, where we can have shared objects).
        \langle \text{ Specializations } 106 \rangle + \equiv
            template \langle matrix\_simple\_template \rangle
526
            bool same(const \ matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, structure, storage) \ \&x, const \ matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, structure, storage) \ \&y)
527
528
              return (x.theRepresentation \equiv y.theRepresentation);
529
            }
530
                Next we define a new type of pair, a pair of indexes. We can use this pair for using stl's map with
        a less comparison function.
        \langle \text{Specializations } 106 \rangle + \equiv
            typedef pair (math::index, math::index) pair;
531
                 \langle \text{Specializations } 106 \rangle + \equiv
            bool operator < (const math::pair \&x, const math::pair \&y);
532
```

```
\langle \text{ Big definitions } 112 \rangle \equiv
            bool operator < (const math::pair \&x, const math::pair \&y)
533
534
               if (x.first > y.first) return false;
535
              if (x.first < y.first) return true;
536
              return (x.second < y.second);
537
538
        This code is used in section 2.
        113. \langle \text{Include files math } 6 \rangle + \equiv
         #include <utility>
539
```

114. We will also interface this library with LAPACK at some point. In order to define the necessary Fortran stuff we include a file automatically generated during the library build. The file contains some LAPACK function prototypes and some definitions to take care of system-dependent LAPACK features (in some systems the function names need underscore, for example). This file will also have the LAPACK definition built-in.

```
\langle \text{ Include files math } 6 \rangle + \equiv
#include <math/private/fortran.h>
```

540

115. While we are at it, some sparse structures used in other programs (such as PCx) have a field with the number of nonzero elements in the matrix. In order to make interface easier we define a method that returns this number.

```
\langle Matrix methods 19 \rangle + \equiv
            index numnonzeros(void) const
541
542
               index result \leftarrow 0;
543
               for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq cols(); ++j)
544
                  for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq rows(); ++i)
545
                    if (get(i,j)) result ++;
546
               return result;
547
548
```

The reshape function works exactly as in Matlab (that is, the new matrix has the same elements taken columnwise from the original). We define it only for unstructured and dense matrices for now. We use our knowledge about the **dense** storage to make this operation very fast. The source matrix is overwritten with the new one.

```
\langle \text{Specializations } 106 \rangle + \equiv
                     template \langle class T \rangle
549
                    \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \ \& \operatorname{reshape}(\operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \ *x, \operatorname{index} \ \operatorname{rows}, \operatorname{index}
550
                                      cols)
551
                         if (x \rightarrow rows() * x \rightarrow cols() \neq rows * cols) throw error::dimension();
552
553
                         x \rightarrow storq() \rightarrow init(rows, cols);
                         x \rightarrow rep() \rightarrow rows() \leftarrow rows;
554
                         x \rightarrow rep() \rightarrow cols() \leftarrow cols;
555
                         return *x;
556
                     }
557
```

117. Algebraic operations. We now reach the point where serious optimization begins: basic algebraic operations are the heart of any matrix package, and if your basic operations suck your entire package will suck too. Since we're defining generic interfaces, we can't possibly reach state-of-the-art performance – but we can get pretty close.

```
/* Empty, waiting for export */
              \langle algebra.h 118 \rangle \equiv
       118.
        #ifndef __MATH_ALGEBRA__
558
        #define __MATH_ALGEBRA__
559
                                 /* For sqrt. */
        #include <math.h>
560
        #include <math/math.h>
561
562
          namespace math {
            (Algebraic operations 119)
563
564
        #endif
565
```

119. We begin our definitions with binary algebraic operators. Unary operators were defined already. These are a little trickier than unary operators because we have structures: the matrix returned can have a different type of structure than that of the arguments (for example, a symmetric matrix times a symmetric matrix is not necessarily symmetric). We therefore start with scalar operations because this problem does not arise.

```
\langle Algebraic operations 119\rangle \equiv
                 template \langle matrix\_simple\_template \rangle matrix\langle T, structure, storage \rangle operator*(const
566
                             \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{structure}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle \& x, \operatorname{const} \mathbf{T} \& y\rangle
567
                    \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{structure}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle \ result \leftarrow x;
568
                    return result *= y;
569
570
           See also sections 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, and 134.
           This code is used in section 118.
                     \langle Algebraic operations 119\rangle + \equiv
                 template \langle matrix\_simple\_template \rangle matrix \langle T, structure, storage \rangle operator*(const
571
                             submatrix \langle matrix \langle T, structure, storage \rangle \rangle \&x, const T \&y)
                 {
572
                    \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{structure}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle \ result \leftarrow x;
573
                    return result *= y;
574
575
                       \langle Algebraic operations 119\rangle + \equiv
                 template \langle matrix\_simple\_template \rangle  matrix\langle T, structure, storage \rangle  operator+(const
576
                              \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{structure}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle \ \&x, \operatorname{const} \ \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{structure}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle \ \&y)
                 {
577
                    if (x.rows() \neq y.rows() \vee x.cols() \neq y.cols()) throw error::dimension();
578
                    \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{structure}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle \ result \leftarrow x;
579
                    return result += y;
580
581
```

The first function we define is one that overwrites a matrix Y with the value of  $\alpha x + y$ . The name saxpy is of common use (it's used, for example, in Golub and Van Loan and in the BLAS package), so we keep it. Note that with this method the variable y is always overwritten, although some uses can be visually misleading. Also, it is the programmer who has to be sure that the structure of y and  $\alpha x + y$  is the same (or compatible), since y is overwritten.

```
\langle Algebraic operations 119\rangle + \equiv
           template \langle class T, submatrix\_template(X), submatrix\_template(Y) \rangle
582
           SUBMY & saxpy (const T & a, const SUBMX & x, SUBMY *y)
583
584
              if (y \rightarrow rows() \neq x.rows() \vee y \rightarrow cols() \neq x.cols()) throw error::dimension();
585
              for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq y \neg cols(); ++j)
586
                for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \le y \neg rows(); ++i) y \neg set(i, j, a * x(i, j) + y \neg get(i, j));
587
              return *y;
588
           }
589
                Next we define the dot product. This method only makes sense for vectors, and we test the dimensions
        before proceeding.
        \langle Algebraic operations 119\rangle + \equiv
           \mathbf{template} \langle submatrix\_template(X), submatrix\_template(Y) \rangle
590
           typename SUBMX::element_type dot(const SUBMX \&x, const SUBMY \&y)
591
592
              if (x.cols() \neq 1 \lor y.cols() \neq 1 \lor x.rows() \neq y.rows()) throw error::dimension();
593
594
              typename SUBMX::element_type result \leftarrow 0;
              for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \le x.rows(); ++i) result += x(i) * y(i);
595
              return result;
596
           }
597
        124. Sometimes we want to multiply a row vector by a column vector. We call this operation the
        "transposed dot" operation. Here x must be a row vector.
        \langle Algebraic operations 119\rangle + \equiv
           template \langle submatrix\_template(X), submatrix\_template(Y) \rangle
598
           typename SUBMX :: element_type tdot(const SUBMX &x, const SUBMY &y)
599
600
              if (x.rows() \neq 1 \lor y.cols() \neq 1 \lor x.cols() \neq y.rows()) throw error::dimension();
601
              typename SUBMX::element_type result \leftarrow 0;
602
              for (index i \leftarrow 1; i < x.cols(); ++i) result += x(1,i) * y(i);
603
              return result;
604
605
           }
```

125. And, just to make you nervous, sometimes we want to take the "dot product" of two row vectors. We call this operation the "transposed-transposed dot" operation. Here x and y must be row vectors.

```
\langle Algebraic operations 119\rangle + \equiv
            template \langle submatrix\_template(X), submatrix\_template(Y) \rangle
606
            typename SUBMX::element_type ttdot(const SUBMX &x, const SUBMY &y)
607
608
               if (x.rows() \neq 1 \lor y.rows() \neq 1 \lor x.cols() \neq y.cols()) throw error::dimension();
609
               typename SUBMX::element_type result \leftarrow 0;
610
               for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \le x.cols(); ++i) result += x(i) * y(i);
611
612
               return result;
            }
613
                 Instead of defining the inner product of a vector we define the 2-norm operator. Since we're calling
        the dot function we don't need to check dimensions here.
         \langle Algebraic operations 119\rangle + \equiv
614
            template \langle submatrix\_template(X) \rangle
            typename SUBMX :: element_type norm2 (const SUBMX &x)
615
616
               return (sqrt(dot(x,x)));
617
618
                 The following method returns the result of the operation Ax, where x is a vector or a matrix. The
        third argument is the destination matrix.
        \langle Algebraic operations 119\rangle + \equiv
            template \langle submatrix\_template(A), submatrix\_template(X), matrix\_simple\_template \rangle
619
            \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{structure}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle \ \& \mathit{axmul}(\mathbf{const} \ \mathbf{SUBMA} \ \& \mathit{A}, \mathbf{const} \ \mathbf{SUBMX}
620
                      &x, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{structure}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle * dest \rangle
621
               index n \leftarrow A.rows();
622
               index m \leftarrow x.cols();
623
624
               index p \leftarrow x.rows();
               if (A.cols() \neq p) throw error::dimension();
625
               dest \neg resize(n, m);
626
               for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \le n; ++i)
627
                  for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq m; ++j) {
628
629
                    T \ aux \leftarrow 0.0;
                    for (index k \leftarrow 1; k \le p; ++k) aux += A(i,k) * x(k,j);
630
631
                     dest \neg entry(i, j) \leftarrow aux;
632
               return * dest;
633
```

```
\langle Algebraic operations 119\rangle + \equiv
             template \langle submatrix\_template(A), submatrix\_template(X), matrix\_simple\_template \rangle
635
             matrix (T, structure, storage) & atxmul (const SUBMA & A, const SUBMX
636
                       &x, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{structure}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle * dest \rangle
637
638
               index n \leftarrow A.cols():
               index m \leftarrow x.cols();
639
               index p \leftarrow x.rows();
640
               if (A.rows() \neq p) throw error::dimension();
641
                dest \neg resize(n, m);
642
               for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \le n; ++i)
643
                  for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq m; ++j) {
644
                     T aux \leftarrow 0.0;
645
                     for (index k \leftarrow 1; k \le p; ++k) aux += A(k,i) * x(k,j);
646
                     dest \neg entry(i, j) \leftarrow aux;
647
648
649
               return *dest;
             }
650
```

129. Next we present the generalized saxpy. In this method, the value a of saxpy is substituted by a matrix, that is, now we have Y = AX + Y. This method is normally heavily used, and it involves a matrix multiplication – it's a target of serious optimization in some libraries. Our generic version must be, well, generic. It shouldn't be much worse than routines for dense and unstructured matrices, however.

```
\langle Algebraic operations 119\rangle + \equiv
            template \langle submatrix\_template(A), submatrix\_template(X), submatrix\_template(Y) \rangle
651
            SUBMY & gaxpy (const SUBMA & A, const SUBMX & x, SUBMY *y)
652
653
               if (y \rightarrow rows() \neq A.rows() \lor y \rightarrow cols() \neq x.cols() \lor x.rows() \neq A.cols()) throw error::dimension();
654
               for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq y \neg cols(); ++j)
655
                  for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \le y \neg rows(); ++i)
656
                    y \rightarrow set(i, j, y \rightarrow get(i, j) + tdot(A.subm(i, i, 1, A.cols()), x.subm(1, x.rows(), j)));
657
               return *y;
658
            }
659
                 We also define a method in case what we want to do is to compute Y = A^T X + Y.
         \langle Algebraic operations 119\rangle + \equiv
660
            template \langle submatrix\_template(A), submatrix\_template(X), submatrix\_template(Y) \rangle
            SUBMY & gatxpy (const SUBMA & A, const SUBMX & x, SUBMY *y)
661
662
               if (y \rightarrow rows() \neq A.cols() \lor y \rightarrow cols() \neq x.cols() \lor x.rows() \neq A.rows()) throw error::dimension();
663
               for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq y \rightarrow cols(); ++j)
664
                  for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq y \neg rows(); ++i)
665
                    y \rightarrow set(i, j, y \rightarrow get(i, j) + dot(A.subm(1, A.rows(), i), x.subm(1, A.rows(), j)));
666
667
               return *y;
668
            }
```

```
131. The outer product operation (returns X \cdot X^T) is sometimes useful.
           \langle Algebraic operations 119\rangle + \equiv
               template \langle matrix\_simple\_template, submatrix\_template(X) \rangle
669
               \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{structure}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle \& outerp(\operatorname{const} \operatorname{SUBMX} \&x, \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{structure}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle * dest)
670
671
               {
                   dest \neg resize(x.rows(), x.rows());
672
                   \mathbf{T} aux;
673
                   for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq x.rows(); ++i)
674
                      for (index j \leftarrow i; j \le x.rows(); ++j) {
675
                          aux \leftarrow ttdot(x.subm(i, i, 1, x.cols()), x.subm(j, j, 1, x.cols()));
676
                          dest \rightarrow entry(i, j) \leftarrow aux;
677
                          dest \rightarrow entry(j, i) \leftarrow aux;
678
679
                  return * dest;
680
681
                      And just to facilitate, we enable the operation X^T \cdot X too.
           \langle Algebraic operations 119\rangle + \equiv
               template \langle matrix\_simple\_template, submatrix\_template(X) \rangle
682
               \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{structure}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle \& \operatorname{outterp}(\operatorname{const} \mathbf{SUBMX} \& x, \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{structure}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle * \operatorname{dest})
683
684
                   dest \neg resize(x.cols(), x.cols());
685
                   \mathbf{T} aux;
686
                   for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq x.cols(); ++i)
687
                      for (index j \leftarrow i; j \le x.cols(); ++j) {
688
                          aux \leftarrow dot(x.subm(1, x.rows(), i, i), x.subm(1, x.rows(), j, j));
689
                          dest \neg entry(i, j) \leftarrow aux;
690
                          dest \rightarrow entry(j, i) \leftarrow aux;
691
692
693
                  return * dest;
694
               }
                     And finally a function to compute xy^T + yx^T, where x and y are vectors.
           \langle Algebraic operations 119\rangle + \equiv
               \mathbf{template} \langle submatrix\_template(Y), submatrix\_template(X), matrix\_simple\_template \rangle
695
               \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{structure}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle \ \&xyyx(\operatorname{const} \ \operatorname{SUBMX} \ \&x, \operatorname{const} \ \operatorname{SUBMY} \ \&y, \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T},
696
                            structure, storage \rangle * dest)
697
                {
                  if (y.cols() \neq 1 \lor x.cols() \neq 1 \lor x.rows() \neq y.rows()) throw error::dimension();
698
                   index n \leftarrow x.rows();
699
700
                   dest \neg resize(n, n);
                   for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq n; ++i)
701
                      for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \le n; ++j) dest \rightarrow entry(i, j) \leftarrow x(i) * y(j) + x(j) * y(i);
702
                  return * dest;
703
704
                }
```

```
134. Now to the outer product update. The function overwrites the matrix A with A + \beta xy^T.
        \langle Algebraic operations 119\rangle + \equiv
            template \langle submatrix\_template(A), submatrix\_template(X), submatrix\_template(Y) \rangle SUBMA
705
                      \&outerp\_update(SUBMA *A, typename SUBMA :: element\_type beta, const SUBMX
                      \&x, const SUBMY \&y)
706
              \mathbf{if}\ (y.cols() \neq 1 \lor x.cols() \neq 1 \lor A\neg rows() \neq x.rows() \lor A\neg cols() \neq y.rows())
707
                throw error::dimension();
708
              index n \leftarrow A \neg rows();
              index m \leftarrow A \neg cols();
709
              for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq m; ++j)
710
                 \textbf{for (index } i \leftarrow 1; \ i \leq n; \ +\!\!+\!\!i) \ \ A \neg set(i,j,A \neg get(i,j) + beta * x(i) * y(j));
711
              return *A;
712
            }
713
```

135. The sparse storage. Now that we have the basics defined, let us exemplify how to create new types of matrices by defining a new storage type.

```
/* Empty, waiting for export */
               \langle \text{sparse.h} \quad 136 \rangle \equiv
        136.
         #ifndef __MATH_SPARSE__
714
         \#define __MATH_SPARSE__ 1.0
715
716
            \langle Include files sparse 139\rangle
           namespace math {
717
              (Sparse storage definition 137)
718
719
         #endif
720
        137. \langle \text{Sparse storage definition } 137 \rangle \equiv
           template\langle class T \rangle
721
722
           class sparse {
              (Sparse storage internal variables 138)
723
           public:
724
725
              (Sparse storage methods 140)
           };
726
        This code is used in section 136.
        138. A sparse matrix stores its elements in a map in which the key is the element index. To simplify
        notation we define a new variable for the map type.
        \langle Sparse storage internal variables 138\rangle \equiv
           typedef map\langle math :: pair, T, less \langle math :: pair \rangle \rangle storage;
727
           storage *elements;
728
        This code is used in section 137.
               \langle \text{Include files sparse } 139 \rangle \equiv
         #include <math/math.h>
                                            /* For math::pair - otherwise unecessary. */
729
         #include <map>
730
        This code is used in section 136.
        140. Now to the interesting part, that is, to the definition of methods that a matrix storage must have.
        We begin by the constructors and destructor: as with the dense case, we define a default constructor, a
        "dimension" constructor and a copy constructor. The interesting part is that we don't need to initialize any
        data or keep any information whatsoever in the creation phase.
        \langle \text{Sparse storage methods } 140 \rangle \equiv
           sparse(void): elements(0) \{ \}
731
           sparse(const index \& rows, const index \& cols): elements(0) { elements \leftarrow new storage; }
732
           sparse(const sparse &source):elements(0)
733
734
           {
              elements \leftarrow \mathbf{new storage}:
735
736
              elements→insert(source.elements→begin(), source.elements→end());
           }
737
        See also sections 141, 142, 143, and 144.
        This code is used in section 137.
        141. \langle \text{Sparse storage methods } 140 \rangle + \equiv
```

~sparse() { if (elements) delete elements; }

738

142. We have now to define how to set and get elements. When setting elements we have to consider setting an element to zero – if the element exists we remove it, otherwise we don't set anything.

```
\langle \text{Sparse storage methods } 140 \rangle + \equiv
\mathbf{void} \ set(\mathbf{const index} \ \&row, \mathbf{const index} \ \&col, \mathbf{const} \ \mathbf{T} \ \&value)
\{
740 \qquad \text{math} :: \math :: \math :: \math :: \math :: \mathor{\text{col}} \cdots \text{col};

742 \qquad \text{if} \ (value \neq \mathor{\text{T}}(0)) \ (*elements)[i] \leftarrow value;

743 \qquad \text{else if} \ (elements \to find(i) \neq elements \to end()) \quad elements \to erase(i);

744 \qquad \}
```

143. Getting elements is not trivial only because if the default behavior of maps is to create non-existing entry when accessing it. Recall that if either row or col are zero we are supposed to return 0 – which will happen because there is no element with index (0,0) stored in a sparse matrix.

144. When resizing we let elements outside the new matrix to stay there just to make resizing fast (very fast, just an empty method). It is assumed that you won't be resizing a sparse matrix to very different sizes.  $\langle \text{Sparse storage methods } 140 \rangle +\equiv$ 

```
void resize(const index &rows, const index &cols) { }
```

751

145. And we are done. The methods listed for this class are the only required methods for a valid matrix storage type. Now that we have the dense and sparse types, however, there is little need for other types, so I consider this work done. The only other kind of storage I can imagine is the block-diagonal storage, but then we have some difficulties (we can have dense and sparse block-diagonal matrices and so on).

**146.** The symmetric structure. Now that we have a new storage defined, let us end the lesson on how to define new matrices by creating a new structure.

```
/* Empty, waiting for export */
               \langle \text{symmetric.h} 147 \rangle \equiv
        #ifndef __MATH_SYMMETRIC__
752
        \#define __MATH_SYMMETRIC__ 1.0
753
        #include <math/math.h>
754
           namespace math {
755
              (Symmetric structure definition 148)
756
757
758
        #endif
        148. \langle Symmetric structure definition 148\rangle \equiv
           template \langle class T \rangle
759
           class symmetric {
760
761
           public:
762
              ⟨Symmetric structure methods 149⟩
763
           };
        This code is used in section 147.
```

149. We start by defining the constructor that takes the dimensions as arguments. A symmetric matrix has to be square, and it can be represented with only n(n+1)/2 elements. We will store them as a vector as follows: if we have a matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ * & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ * & * & a_{33} \end{bmatrix},$$

then we store is as the vector

```
\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{22} & a_{13} & a_{23} & a_{33} \end{bmatrix}.
```

This scheme is the same one used in the LAPACK package, so we will use it to facilitate interfacing with it.

```
\langle \text{Symmetric structure methods } 149 \rangle \equiv
```

```
void resize(math::index *rows, math::index *cols)
{
   if (*rows \neq *cols) throw error::nonsquare();
   *rows \leftarrow (*rows) * (*rows + 1)/2;
   *cols \leftarrow 1;
}
```

 $\mathbf{symmetric}(\mathbf{math} :: \mathbf{index} * rows, \mathbf{math} :: \mathbf{index} * cols) \ \{ \ \mathit{resize}(\mathit{rows}, \mathit{cols}); \ \}$ 

See also sections 150 and 151.

764 765

766

767

768

769

770

This code is used in section 148.

39

782

**150.** Next we define the *preprocess* method. After some algebra, you will see that the index of the element (i, j) is given by

$$\frac{j(j-1)}{2} + i$$

if  $j \geq i$ , that is, if the element is on the upper triangle of the matrix. In this class these are the elements that are stored. The elements of the lower triangle are not assignable.

```
⟨Symmetric structure methods 149⟩ +≡
771
            bool preprocess(\mathbf{math}::\mathbf{index}*row,\mathbf{math}::\mathbf{index}*col) \mathbf{const}
772
              if (*col \ge *row) {
773
                 *row \leftarrow (*col - 1) * (*col)/2 + (*row);
774
                 *col \leftarrow 1;
775
                 return true; /* Assignable. */
776
777
              *row \leftarrow (*row - 1) * (*row)/2 + (*col);
778
              *col \leftarrow 1;
779
                                  /* Not assignable. */
              return false;
780
781
        151. We need a copy constructor, which is empty.
        ⟨Symmetric structure methods 149⟩ +≡
```

symmetric (const symmetric &) {}

**152.** And we are done. I cannot help feeling proud of the flexibility of this system. In less than two pages we defined a whole new matrix structure, and this is taken into account documentation!

153. File streams: input. Files are the most convenient interface with other programs. I chose the Matlab file format for simple interface with a widely used program. Since Matlab's version 4 file format is public we will use it against the new format, which is proprietary and secret and sucks.

```
#include "fstream.h"
                \langle fstream.h 154 \rangle \equiv
         #ifndef __MATH_FSTREAM__
783
         #define __MATH_FSTREAM__
784
            (Include files fstream 156)
785
         #include <math/math.h>
786
           namespace math {
787
788
              \langle fstream \text{ structures } 162 \rangle
              \langle fstream \text{ declarations } 155 \rangle
789
790
         #endif
791
               We will first define the input stream, so that you will be able to load matrices from a MATLAB file.
        Almost all the work is already done by the standard library ifstream class, the only thing we need to do is
        to specialize it a little bit. We will want, for example, to find a matrix by name.
        \langle fstream \text{ declarations } 155 \rangle \equiv
           class ifstream : public std::ifstream {
792
           public:
793
              \langle ifstream methods 157 \rangle
794
           };
795
        See also section 181.
        This code is used in section 154.
                \langle Include files fstream 156 \rangle \equiv
796
         #include <fstream>
        See also sections 163 and 171.
        This code is used in section 154.
        157.
                The first thing to do is to overload some constructors for compatibility with the standard ifstream
        class.
        \langle ifstream methods 157 \rangle \equiv
           ifstream()
797
           : std::ifstream() { }
798
           ifstream(int fd)
799
           : std :: ifstream(fd) { }
800
        See also sections 158, 159, 160, 164, 166, 167, 169, 170, 172, 174, 176, and 178.
        This code is used in section 155.
               Now to the opening of files. A matrix file is binary, so we change the default ifstream mode on both
        the constructor and the open method accordingly.
        \langle ifstream methods 157 \rangle + \equiv
           ifstream(const char *name, int mode \leftarrow ios :: in \mid ios :: binary, int prot \leftarrow {}^{\circ}664)
801
           : std::ifstream(name, mode, prot) {}
802
```

160. Unfortunately, the binary format of my lybrary does not work for long or double, that is, I cannot use the operator ≫ to get these value types from a file. But we can fix it very easily by defining new operators. The trick, in both cases, is to declare an union of unsigned char and long (or double) and read unsigned chars from the file. Since we have the desired type in the union, what we are actually doing is filling in the value. We will only overload the ≫ operator for the long case, because it will be convenient when reading matrices headers. For the double case it is simpler to do the trick when reading the matrix data itself.

```
\langle ifstream methods 157 \rangle + \equiv
           ifstream &operator≫(long &);
807
               math::ifstream \& math::ifstream::operator \gg (long \& dest)
808
             union {
809
                long Long;
810
                unsigned char Char[sizeof(long)];
811
812
             for (int i \leftarrow 0; i \neq sizeof(long); this \neg get(tricky.Char[i++]));
813
              dest \leftarrow tricky.Long;
814
             return *this:
815
           }
816
```

**162.** Now we define a method that will read a matrix header. In MATLAB files, a matrix header consists of a sequence of fields that we will read in a structure as described below.

```
\langle fstream \text{ structures } 162 \rangle \equiv
           struct fheader {
817
                              /* Type of the object. */
             long type;
818
             long rows;
                               /* Number of rows. */
819
                              /* Number of cols. */
820
             long cols;
             bool iflaq;
                               /* true if matrix has imaginary part. */
821
                                  /* Matrix name. */
822
             string name;
           };
823
        This code is used in section 154.
```

**163.** ⟨Include files *fstream* 156⟩ +≡ #include <string>

824

825

**164.** The actual data on a MATLAB file is somewhat different. The three first fields from **fheader** are the same. The *iflag* field is a **long** on the original file, and after it there is a **long** field with the number of characters in the name (including the terminating '\0') followed by the matrix name. If we encounter an error while parsing the header we return, instead of throwing an error, since this method is not intended for end users.

```
\langle \text{ifstream methods } 157 \rangle + \equiv \text{void } parse\_header(\text{fheader } \& header);
```

```
void math::ifstream::parse_header(math::fheader &header)
           {
826
             long name_length;
827
             long file\_flag;
828
             *this \gg header.type \gg header.rows \gg header.cols \gg file_flag \gg name_length;
829
             if (rdstate() \neq goodbit) return;
830
             header.iflag \leftarrow \mathbf{bool}(file\_flag);
831
             header.name.assign(name\_length, 0);
                                                          /* Reserve space for matrix name. */
832
             for (int i \leftarrow 0; i \neq int(name\_length); this-get(header.name[i++]));
833
           }
834
```

166. We are now in position to load a matrix. In a MATLAB file the matrix data is stored by columns, in two separate blocks for real and imaginary parts. If the matrix does not have an imaginary part there is only the real block in the file. There is only one complication: if we are to define a single method, then we must call, in case of a complex matrix, the method set with a complex argument. Even if this method is not called it must be compiled. Now, if the matrix is of type, say, double, then there will be a compiler error, because there is no conversion from complex to double. The solution to this problem is to define two functions, specializing for complex matrices. First we will define the method for non-complex matrices. In this case we simply disconsider the eventual imaginary part of the file matrix.

```
\langle ifstream methods 157 \rangle + \equiv
            template \langle matrix\_simple\_template \rangle
835
            ifstream & operator \gg (matrix \langle T, structure, storage \rangle \& dest)
836
        167. Until the compiler accepts export we are stuck with the inline method.
         \langle ifstream methods 157 \rangle + \equiv
            {
837
               math::fheader header;
838
               parse\_header(header);
839
               if (rdstate() \neq goodbit) throw math::error::filerr();
840
               dest.init(header.rows, header.cols);
841
               for (int ipart \leftarrow 0; ipart \leq header.iflag; ipart \leftrightarrow 0)
842
843
                  for (int j \leftarrow 1; j < header.cols; j \leftrightarrow j
                    for (int i \leftarrow 1; i \leq header.rows; i \leftrightarrow) {
844
                       double number;
845
                       (Get number from file, using the same tricky method as for longs 168)
846
                       if (\neg ipart) dest.set(i, j, number);
847
848
               return *this;
849
850
         168. \langle \text{Get } number \text{ from file, using the same tricky method as for longs 168} \rangle \equiv
            union {
851
852
               double Double:
               unsigned char Char[sizeof(double)];
853
854
            for (int k \leftarrow 0; k \neq \text{sizeof}(\text{double}); this \neg get(tricky.Char[k++]));
855
```

 $number \leftarrow tricky.Double;$ This code is used in sections 167 and 170.

856

857

859

861

862

866

867

868 869

871

874

875

877

881

883

884

885

}

Next we do the same thing for **complex** matrices. In this case there is nothing to worry about: if the file matrix does not have an imaginary part, the matrix itself will have the imaginary part zeroed.  $\langle ifstream methods 157 \rangle + \equiv$  $template \langle matrix\_simple\_template \rangle$ ifstream & operator  $\gg$  (matrix  $\langle$  complex  $\langle$  T $\rangle$ , structure, storage  $\rangle$  & dest) 858 170. Until the compiler accepts **export** we are stuck with the inline method.  $\langle ifstream methods 157 \rangle + \equiv$ math::fheader header; 860  $parse\_header(header);$ if  $(rdstate() \neq goodbit)$  throw math::error::filerr(); dest.init(header.rows, header.cols); 863 for (int  $ipart \leftarrow 0$ ;  $ipart \leq header.iflag$ ; ipart +++) 864 for (int  $j \leftarrow 1$ ; j < header.cols;  $j \leftrightarrow j$ 865 for (int  $i \leftarrow 1$ ;  $i \leq header.rows$ ;  $i \leftrightarrow$ ) { double number; (Get number from file, using the same tricky method as for longs 168) **if**  $(\neg ipart)$  dest.set(i, j, number);else dest.set(i, j, dest(i, j) + number \* std :: complex (double)(0, 1));870 return \*this; 872 873  $\langle$  Include files fstream 156 $\rangle + \equiv$ #include <complex> 172. At this point we are able to load a matrix. Sometimes, however, we will need to skip matrices (to load the second one, for example) or to find matrices by name. We begin by defining a method to skip matrices. First we parse the current matrix header and then skip the data using a skip\_data method.  $\langle ifstream methods 157 \rangle + \equiv$ **void** *skip*(**int** *num\_matrices*); void math::ifstream::skip(int num\_matrices) 876 math::fheader header; **while** (num\_matrices ---) { 878  $parse\_header(header);$ 879 880 **if**  $(rdstate() \neq goodbit)$ throw math::error::generic("Tooumanyumatricesutouskip.");  $skip\_data(header);$ 882

Skipping the data is a simple matter of reading the necessary amount of bytes from the body of the 174. matrix.

```
\langle ifstream methods 157 \rangle + \equiv
    void skip\_data(\mathbf{const}\ \mathbf{fheader}\ \&header);
```

throw math::error::generic("No\_matrix\_with\_supplied\_name\_in\_the\_file.");

909

910 911 position ++;

This code is used in section 179.

181. File streams: output. The input part is complete, so let us go on the next part. Again, the biggest job is already done by the standard library ofstream class, we just need to specialize it a little. The problem now is that we must give matrices a name before writing them to a file. We will do that by keeping a private string for the matrix name in the class and providing a means to modify it.

```
\langle fstream \text{ declarations } 155 \rangle + \equiv
           class of stream : public std::of stream {
912
              string matrix_name;
913
914
           public:
              (ofstream methods 182)
915
           };
916
               We overload some constructors for compatibility with the standard ofstream library.
        \langle  ofstream methods 182 \rangle \equiv
           ofstream()
917
           : std::ofstream() {}
918
           ofstream(int fd)
919
           : std::ofstream(fd) {}
920
        See also sections 183, 184, 185, 187, 189, 190, 193, and 194.
        This code is used in section 181.
        183. Now to the opening of files. A matrix file is binary, so we change the default ofstream mode on
        both the constructor and the open method accordingly.
        \langle ofstream methods 182\rangle + \equiv
           of stream (const char *name, int mode \leftarrow ios :: out \mid ios :: binary, int prot \leftarrow °664)
921
922
           : std::ofstream(name, mode, prot) {}
               \langle ofstream methods 182\rangle + \equiv
        184.
           void open(\mathbf{const}\ \mathbf{char}\ *name, \mathbf{int}\ mode \leftarrow \mathbf{ios} :: in \mid \mathbf{ios} :: binary, \mathbf{int}\ prot \leftarrow °664)
923
924
             std::ofstream::open(name, mode, prot);
925
           }
926
               Now to the writing algorithms: since we normally write matrices in sequence, providing a method
        like the ifstream's skipto is unhandy and cumbersome to use. The solution is to "write the matrix name"
        to the stream before writing the matrix itself. This operation will assign the matrix name field of the header
        to the specified name.
        \langle ofstream methods 182\rangle + \equiv
           ofstream & operator \ll (const char *name);
927
               math::ofstream &math::ofstream::operator <</p>
        186.
928
           {
929
              matrix\_name \leftarrow name;
              return *this;
930
           }
931
               Like with the input stream case, we define a method to output longs. The trick used is exactly the
        same.
        \langle  ofstream methods 182\rangle + \equiv
           ofstream & operator \ll (const long &);
932
```

```
(§188)
                         FILE STREAMS: OUTPUT
                                                                                    MATH LIBRARY (Version alpha 3-22-2002)
        188.
                math::ofstream &math::ofstream::operator <</p>
           {
933
934
              union {
                long Long;
935
                unsigned char Char[sizeof(long)];
936
937
              tricky.Long \leftarrow source;
938
              for (int i \leftarrow 0; i \neq sizeof(long); this \neg put(tricky.Char[i++]));
939
              return *this;
940
           }
941
                We are now ready to write matrices. We have here the same problem with complex types as we had
        in the input stream case, and we adopt the same specialization solution.
        \langle ofstream methods 182\rangle + \equiv
           template \langle matrix\_simple\_template \rangle
942
           ofstream &operator \ll (const matrix \langle T, structure, storage \rangle & source)
943
               Waiting for export...
        \langle ofstream methods 182\rangle +\equiv
944
              long iflaq \leftarrow 0;
945
              Write matrix header 191
946
              for (math::index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq source.cols(); ++j)
947
                for (math::index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq source.rows(); ++i) {
948
                   double number;
949
                   number \leftarrow \mathbf{double}(source(i, j));
950
                   (Write number to file, using the same tricky mehtod as for longs 192)
951
952
              return *this;
953
954
               \langle \text{Write matrix header 191} \rangle \equiv
            *this \ll \log(0) \ll \log(source.rows()) \ll \log(source.cols()) \ll iflag \ll
955
                long(matrix\_name.size() + 1);
           for (unsigned int i \leftarrow 0; i \leq matrix\_name.size(); this¬put(matrix\_name.c\_str()[i++]));
956
        This code is used in sections 190 and 194.
        192. Write number to file, using the same tricky mehtod as for longs 192 \equiv
           union {
957
              double Double;
958
              unsigned char Char[sizeof(double)];
959
            } tricky;
960
           tricky.Double \leftarrow number;
961
           for (int k \leftarrow 0; k \neq \text{sizeof}(\text{double}); this \neg put(tricky.Char[k++]));
962
        This code is used in sections 190 and 194.
        193. Now to the complex specialization.
        \langle ofstream methods 182\rangle + \equiv
           template \langle matrix\_simple\_template \rangle
963
           ofstream &operator \ll (const matrix \langle complex \langle T\rangle, structure, storage\rangle & source)
964
```

```
965
966
967
968
969
970
971
972
973
974
975
976
```

```
194. Waiting for export...
         \langle ofstream methods 182\rangle + \equiv
               long iflaq \leftarrow 1;
               ⟨Write matrix header 191⟩
               for (int ipart \leftarrow 0; ipart < 1; ++ipart)
                  for (math::index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq source.cols(); ++j)
                     for (math::index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq source.rows(); ++i) {
                       double number;
                       complex \langle double \rangle \ aux;
                       aux \leftarrow \mathbf{complex} \langle \mathbf{double} \rangle (source(i, j));
                       if (\neg ipart) number \leftarrow aux.real();
                       else number \leftarrow aux.imag();
                       (Write number to file, using the same tricky mehtod as for longs 192)
977
               return *this;
978
979
```

With the end of the file streams classes we finished the main body of the library. With the definitions so far provided, you are able to do everything you want, including interfacing with MATLAB. Of course, what we have is too basic for complex algorithms, so our task now is to provide common functions, such as various types of matrix decompositions, solution of systems, and functions like determinant, inverse and so on. The point is that the main job is done, that is, the definition of the structures and methods necessary to develop algorithms. From now on there is really nothing really new, no impacting decisions to be made. The fun is not gone, but instead is replaced by the fun of using the power of the matrix class to write beautiful code.

196. The LU decomposition. We now begin to build the backbone of any linear algebra library: the matrix decomposition functions. We begin with the most simple, the LU decomposition. The goal is to decompose a matrix A into a product of a lower-triangular matrix L and an upper-triangular matrix U, that is, we want to have A = LU. The main purpose of this decomposition is to solve linear systems: if we want to solve Ax = b, we decompose matrix A and then solve two systems, Ly = b and Ux = y to find the solution. The point is that solving triangular systems is very easy by back or forward substitution.

```
/* Empty, waiting for export */
```

```
\langle lu.h 197 \rangle \equiv
       197.
        #ifndef __MATH_LU__
980
        #define __MATH_LU__
981
                                1.0
982
        #include <math/math.h>
        #include <vector>
983
        #include <complex>
                                  /* For templatized abs. */
984
          namespace math {
985
          namespace lu {
986
            (LU prototypes 199)
987
988
          } }
        #endif
989
```

198. We can understand the way the decomposition works by considering the first step in a  $3 \times 3$  matrix. We build a matrix  $M_1$  such that the first column of  $M_1A$  is zero, except for the first element. The construction is

$$M_1A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -\frac{a_{21}}{a_{11}} & 1 & 0 \\ -\frac{a_{31}}{a_{11}} & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ 0 & a_{22} - \frac{a_{21}a_{12}}{a_{11}} & a_{23} - \frac{a_{21}a_{13}}{a_{11}} \\ 0 & a_{32} - \frac{a_{31}a_{12}}{a_{11}} & a_{33} - \frac{a_{31}a_{13}}{a_{11}} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Now we can repeat the procedure with the remaining blocks of the matrix so that

$$M_2M_1A = U,$$

where U is upper-triangular. Since  $M_i$  is lower-triangular, so it is its inverse, and defining  $L = M_1^{-1} M_2^{-1}$  we finally have A = LU. A matrix of the form  $M_i$  is called a *Gauss transformation*, and the *i*th column of  $M_i$  is represented by  $m_i = (0, 0, \ldots, 1, -\tau_{i+1}, \ldots, -\tau_n)$ . The vector  $\tau = (\tau_{i+1}, \ldots, \tau_n)$  is called the *Gauss vector*. In this way, a Gauss transformation  $M_i$  can be represented as  $M_i = (I - \tau^T e_i)$ .

There is only one possible problem with the algorithm. Looking at the first step of the  $3 \times 3$  decomposition example we can see that, if  $a_{11}$  is small, we have numerical problems because the Gauss vector could have too large elements. This effect can propagate through the rest of the algorithm. The solution is to find the decomposition for a permuted version of A, such that at every step we have the largest possible denominator in the Gauss vector. The denominator is called the *pivot*, and the method of permutations is called *pivoting*. The LU decomposition has a workload of  $O(n^3)$  flops (actually exactly  $2n^3/3$ ) and, if with pivoting,  $O(n^2)$  comparisons.

no structure.

199. Our basic function will be one that will overwrite the input matrix with U on the upper part and L on the lower part (it can be easily shown – see Golub and Van Loan – that L is a row permutation of the Gauss vectors). A vector pivots will store the data about the permutations, such that at step k we multiply A by the identity matrix with rows k and pivots(k) swapped. The function returns 1 if the number of permutations is even and -1 otherwise. Since we will overwrite the matrix at will, we require it to have

```
\langle LU \text{ prototypes } 199 \rangle \equiv
              template\langle class T, template\langle class \rangle class storage \rangle
 990
              int decompose(\mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle *A, \mathbf{vector} \langle \mathbf{index} \rangle *pivots)
 991
 992
                                                   /* No permutations yet. */
                 int permutations \leftarrow 1;
 993
 994
                 index n \leftarrow A \neg rows();
                 if (n \neq A \rightarrow cols()) throw error::nonsquare();
 995
 996
                 pivots \rightarrow resize(n-1,0);
                                                   /* Reserve space for permutation data. */
                 for (index k \leftarrow 1; k \neq n; ++k) {
 997
                    \mathbf{T} pivot;
 998
 999
                    (Search for pivot and swap rows if necessary 200)
                    if (pivot \neq 0) (Apply Gauss transformation 201)
1000
1001
                 return permutations;
1002
1003
          See also sections 202, 203, and 204.
          This code is used in section 197.
                  \langle Search for pivot and swap rows if necessary 200\rangle \equiv
              pivot \leftarrow A \neg qet(k, k);
1004
              (*pivots)[k-1] \leftarrow k;
                                              /* STL vector has base index 0. */
1005
              for (index i \leftarrow k+1; i \le n; ++i)
1006
                 if (abs(A \rightarrow get(i, k)) > abs(pivot)) {
1007
                    pivot \leftarrow A \neg qet(i, k);
1008
                    (*pivots)[k-1] \leftarrow i;
1009
1010
              if ((*pivots)[k-1] \neq k) /* If need to swap. */
1011
1012
                 permutations *= -1;
1013
                 A \rightarrow swaprows(k, (*pivots)[k-1]);
1014
1015
          This code is used in section 199.
          201. \langle Apply Gauss transformation 201\rangle \equiv
              for (index i \leftarrow k+1; i \leq n; ++i) {
1016
                 if (\neg finite(A \neg entry(i, k) \leftarrow A \neg get(i, k) / A \neg get(k, k))) throw error :: singular();
1017
                 for (index j \leftarrow k+1; j \le n; ++j) A-entry(i,j) \leftarrow A-get(i,j) - A-get(i,k) * A-get(k,j);
1018
1019
          This code is used in section 199.
```

 $\langle LU \text{ prototypes } 199 \rangle + \equiv$ 

finish(\*A, pivots, &B);

return \*B;

}

1046 1047

1048

**202.** Solving a linear system. As hinted before, the principal application of the LU decomposition is the solution of linear systems. The function we will define will solve a matrix linear system AX = B. The decomposition just defined gives us information to compute  $P_{n-1} \dots P_1 A = LU$ , where  $P_i$  are permutation matrices defined by the *pivots* vector. Having the LU decomposition, we solve the system Ax = b by first solving  $Ly = P_{n-1} \dots P_1 b$  and then Ux = y. By doing this to all columns of X and B we are able to solve AX = B. We define now a function that, given a decomposition and a matrix B, overwrite in B the solution to AX = B. We define this function separately because if you want to solve  $A^kX = B$ , you need to perform only one decomposition and call this function k times.

```
template \langle class T, template \langle class \rangle class storage \rangle
1020
                void finish(const \ matrix \langle T, unstructured, storage \rangle \& A, const \ vector \langle index \rangle
1021
                           & pivots, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle *B \rangle
1022
                   index n \leftarrow A.rows();
1023
                                                                 /* B \leftarrow P_{n-1} \dots P_1 B */
                   for (index i \leftarrow 1; i < n; ++i)
1024
                      B \neg swaprows(i, pivots[i-1]);
1025
                   for (index k \leftarrow B \neg cols(); k \neq 0; --k) {
1026
                      for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \le n; ++i)  /* Solve Ly = B(:,k) */
1027
                      {
1028
                         T inner \leftarrow 0:
1029
                         for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \neq i; ++j) inner += A(i,j) * B \rightarrow get(j,k);
1030
                         B \rightarrow entry(i, k) \leftarrow B \rightarrow qet(i, k) - inner;
1031
1032
                      for (index i \leftarrow n; i \ge 1; --i) /* Solve Ux = B(:,k). */
1033
1034
                         T inner \leftarrow 0:
1035
                         for (index j \leftarrow i+1; j \le n; ++j) inner += A(i,j) * B \rightarrow get(j,k);
1036
                         if (\neg finite(B \neg entry(i, k) \leftarrow (B \neg qet(i, k) - inner)/A(i, i))) throw error::singular();
1037
1038
                   }
1039
               }
1040
           203. Finally, we provide an interface (that will destroy the original matrix, by the way). Note that we can
           compute the inverse of a matrix by calling this function with B = I_n.
           \langle LU \text{ prototypes } 199 \rangle + \equiv
                template\langle class T, template\langle class \rangle class storage \rangle
1041
                \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle \ \& solve(\operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{storage})
1042
                           *A, matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, unstructured, storage\rangle *B\rangle
                {
1043
                   \mathbf{vector}\langle \mathbf{index} \rangle \ pivots;
1044
                   decompose(A, \&pivots);
1045
```

if  $((*pivots)[i-1] \neq i)$  status \*=-1;

This code is used in sections 205 and 209.

1069

**204.** Interfacing with Lapack. The routines just written enable you to compute the LU decomposition of any type of matrix. For certain types, however, we have extremely efficient decomposition functions already coded in the Lapack package. It only makes sense to call these routines when possible, and the MATH library provides the ideal transparent interface: you call the exact same function, and if there is a Lapack function to do the job, then the function will be called.

```
\langle LU prototypes 199\rangle +\equiv
1049 #ifdef LAPACK
1050 \langle LU lapack interface 205\rangle
1051 #endif
```

205. The key for the transparent operation is specialization. The trick here is that we need to make sure that the matrix does not share the representation, otherwise the call to the LAPACK routine will modify all matrices sharing it.

```
matrices sharing it.
          \langle LU | lapack interface 205 \rangle \equiv
             template()
1052
             int\ decompose(matrix\langle fortran::double\_precision, unstructured, dense) *A, vector\langle index\rangle
1053
                       *pivots)
1054
                (Prepare for lapack LU 206)
1055
                dgetrf(\&m,\&n,A\rightarrow storg()\rightarrow memory(),\&m,(int*) pivots\rightarrow begin(),\&status);
1056
                (Check for lapack LU errors 207)
1057
                (Compute number of permutations and store it in status 208)
1058
                return status;
1059
             }
1060
         See also section 209.
         This code is used in section 204.
                 \langle \text{ Prepare for lapack LU 206} \rangle \equiv
1061
             fortran::integer m \leftarrow fortran::integer (A \rightarrow rows());
             fortran::integer n \leftarrow fortran::integer(A \neg cols());
1062
             fortran::integer status \leftarrow 0;
1063
             pivots \neg resize(min(m, n), 0);
1064
         This code is used in sections 205 and 209.
                 \langle Check for lapack LU errors 207\rangle \equiv
             if (status > 0) throw error::singular();
1065
1066
             if (status < 0) throw error::generic();
         This code is used in sections 205 and 209.
         208. In order to be compatible with our own LU decomposition routine, we need to compute the number
         of permutations (1 means even number, -1 means odd).
          \langle Compute number of permutations and store it in status 208\rangle \equiv
             status \leftarrow 1:
1067
1068
             for (index i \leftarrow 1; i < (index) \min(m, n); i \leftrightarrow i)
```

```
209. \langle LU lapack interface 205\rangle +\equiv
                template\langle \rangle
1070
                \textbf{int} \ \textit{decompose}(\textbf{matrix} \langle \textbf{fortran} :: \textbf{real}, \textbf{unstructured}, \textbf{dense}) \ *A, \textbf{vector} \langle \textbf{index} \rangle \ *pivots)
1071
1072
                    \langle\, \text{Prepare for lapack LU } \, 206 \, \rangle
1073
                    sgetrf(\&m,\&n,A\rightarrow storg()\rightarrow memory(),\&m,(int*)\ pivots\rightarrow begin(),\&status);
1074
                    (Check for lapack LU errors 207)
1075
                    Compute number of permutations and store it in status 208
1076
                   return status;
1077
1078
                }
```

/\* Empty, waiting for **export** \*/

**210.** The Cholesky decomposition. The LU decomposition works for all types of square matrices. If, however, a matrix is symmetric, then we will see that we can cut the work in half: first, instead of decomposing A = LU we do A = LDU, where D is diagonal and both L and U have unit diagonal (the matrix L is already unit diagonal, and we can make the matrix U the same by scaling it with a diagonal matrix D). Now, if A is symmetric, then we have  $L^{-1}AL^{-T} = DUL^{-T}$  is also symmetric, but this can only be true if  $U = L^T$ . Hence, if A is symmetric we can decompose it such that  $A = LL^T$ , so we need to find only one matrix. If, in addition, A is positive definite, then there is no need for pivoting, and the resulting decomposition is called the "Cholesky decomposition."

```
\langle \text{cholesky.h} 211 \rangle \equiv
        211.
1079
         #ifndef __MATH_CHOLESKY__
         \#define __MATH_CHOLESKY__ 1.0
1080
         #include <math/math.h>
1081
         #include <math/symmetric.h>
1082
         #include <math.h>
                                  /* for sqrt. */
1083
1084
           namespace math {
1085
           namespace cholesky {
              (Cholesky prototypes 212)
1086
           } }
1087
         #endif
1088
```

**212.** Another way to see that we can decompose  $A = LL^T$  if A is symmetric is by estabilishing the equality

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & \alpha^T \\ \alpha & B \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{a_{11}} & 0 \\ \alpha/\sqrt{a_{11}} & I \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & B - \alpha\alpha^T/a_{11} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{a_{11}} & \alpha^T/\sqrt{a_{11}} \\ 0 & I \end{bmatrix},$$

which already hints the algorithm. One characteristic of the decomposition is that it is stable even without pivoting, and that during the entire algorithm all diagonal elements remain positive if the matrix itself is positive definite. The function we will define will overwrite the upper triangular part of A with  $L^T$ . We do that because now we know that a symmetric matrix structure stores only the upper triangle elements.

```
\langle \text{Cholesky prototypes } 212 \rangle \equiv
                template \langle matrix\_simple\_template \rangle
1089
                void decompose(\mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{structure}, \mathbf{storage}\rangle *A)
1090
1091
                   index n \leftarrow A \neg rows();
1092
                   if (n \neq A \neg cols()) throw error::nonsquare();
1093
                   for (index k \leftarrow 1; k \le n; ++k) {
1094
                      if (A \rightarrow get(k, k) \le 0) throw error::nonpositivedef();
1095
                      \langle \text{ Build } L^T \text{ row } 213 \rangle;
1096
                      ⟨ Apply Cholesky transformation 214⟩;
1097
1098
                }
1099
           See also sections 215, 216, and 217.
           This code is used in section 211.
           213. \langle \text{Build } L^T \text{ row } 213 \rangle \equiv
                A \rightarrow entry(k, k) \leftarrow sqrt(A \rightarrow qet(k, k));
1100
                for (index j \leftarrow k+1; j \le n; ++j)
1101
                   if (\neg finite(A \neg entry(k, j) \leftarrow A \neg get(k, j)/A \neg get(k, k))) throw error::singular();
1102
           This code is used in section 212.
```

1129

1130

1131

return \*B;

}

```
\langle \text{Apply Cholesky transformation } 214 \rangle \equiv
        for (index i \leftarrow k+1; i < n; ++i)
1103
          1104
      This code is used in section 212.
```

215. Solving a linear system. The Cholesky decomposition uses half the number of flops as the LU, and in addition there is no pivoting overhead. It is only advisable to use it to solve linear equations with positive definite matrices. We solve a system AX = B vector by vector of X by first solving Ly = b and then  $L^T x = y$ . As with the LU decomposition we define a function that solves the system given a previously computed decomposition. The solution X is overwritten in matrix B.

```
\langle Cholesky prototypes 212\rangle + \equiv
                                                 template\langle class \ T, template\langle class \rangle \ class \ structure\_A, template\langle class \rangle \ class
1105
                                                                structure_B, template \langle class \rangle class storage \rangle
                                                void finish (const matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{structure\_A}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle \& A, \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{structure\_B}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle *B)
1106
1107
                                                         index n \leftarrow A.rows();
1108
                                                          \begin{array}{lll} \textbf{for (index} \ k \leftarrow B \neg cols(\ ); \ k \neq 0; \ --k) \ \{ \\ \textbf{for (index} \ i \leftarrow 1; \ i \leq n; \ +\!+i) & /* \ \text{Solve} \ Ly = B(:,k). \ */ \end{array} 
1109
1110
1111
                                                                             T inner \leftarrow 0;
1112
                                                                            for (index j \leftarrow 1; j < i; ++j)
1113
                                                                                             /* Here we have to remember that we overwrote only the upper triangular part of A, so that
                                                                                                     now we have to get the element A(j,i) instead of A(i,j). */
1114
                                                                                      inner += A(j,i) * B \rightarrow get(j,k);
                                                                            if (\neg finite(B \neg entry(i, k) \leftarrow (B \neg qet(i, k) - inner)/A(i, i))) throw error::singular();
1115
1116
                                                                   for (index i \leftarrow n; i \ge 1; --i) /* Solve L^T x = y. */
1117
1118
                                                                             T inner \leftarrow 0;
1119
                                                                            for (index j \leftarrow i+1; j \leq n; ++j) inner += A(i,j) * B \rightarrow get(j,k);
1120
                                                                            if (\neg finite(B \neg entry(i, k) \leftarrow (B \neg qet(i, k) - inner)/A(i, i))) throw error::singular();
1121
                                                                   }
1122
                                                         }
1123
                                                }
1124
                                                                Finally, we provide an interface for the linear solver. The big warning is that the A matrix will be
                                    overwritten too, not only B!!!
                                    \langle Cholesky prototypes 212\rangle + \equiv
1125
                                                 template (class T, template (class) class structure_A, template (class) class
                                                               structure_B, template \langle class \rangle class storage \rangle
                                                \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{structure}_{-}\mathbf{B}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle \ \& solve(\operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{structure}_{-}\mathbf{A}, \operatorname{storage}) \ *A, \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{structure}_{-}\mathbf{A}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle \ *A, \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{m
1126
                                                                                   structure_B, storage > *B
                                                {
1127
                                                          decompose(A);
1128
                                                         finish(*A, B);
```

**217. Interfacing with** LAPACK. Again, the routines we just defined can compute the Cholesky decomposition of any matrix. If you have LAPACK installed, however, you can take advantage of years and years of laborious code optimization – why not use it?

```
\langle Cholesky prototypes 212\rangle + \equiv
          #include <math/private/fortran.h>
1132
          #ifdef HAVE_LIBLAPACK
1133
             (Cholesky lapack interface 218)
1134
          #endif
1135
         218. We begin with the double precision symmetric matrix case. The others are very similar, we just have
         to replace the function call.
         \langle Cholesky lapack interface 218\rangle \equiv
1136
             template()
             void decompose(matrix \langle fortran :: double_precision, symmetric, dense) *A)
1137
1138
                (Prepare for lapack Cholesky 219)
1139
               dpptrf(\&mode,\&n,A\rightarrow storg()\rightarrow memory(),\&status);
1140
                (Check lapack Cholesky errors 220)
1141
1142
         See also sections 221, 222, and 223.
         This code is used in section 217.
                 \langle \text{Prepare for lapack Cholesky 219} \rangle \equiv
             fortran::integer n \leftarrow A \neg rows();
1143
             fortran::integer m \leftarrow A \neg cols();
1144
            fortran::integer status \leftarrow 0;
1145
            fortran::character mode \leftarrow 'U';
1146
1147
            if (n \neq m) throw error::nonsquare();
         This code is used in sections 218, 221, 222, and 223.
                  \langle Check lapack Cholesky errors 220\rangle \equiv
         220.
1148
             if (status > 0) throw error::nonpositivedef();
            if (status < 0) throw error::generic();
1149
         This code is used in sections 218, 221, 222, and 223.
         221. As said before, the rest of the routines is essentially the same, except that for unstructured matrices
         we need to pass also the number of columns to the LAPACK routines.
         \langle Cholesky lapack interface 218\rangle + \equiv
1150
             template()
             void decompose(\mathbf{matrix}\langle\mathbf{fortran}::\mathbf{real},\mathbf{symmetric},\mathbf{dense}\rangle*A)
1151
1152
                (Prepare for lapack Cholesky 219)
1153
               spptrf(\&mode,\&n,A \neg storg() \neg memory(),\&status);
1154
1155
                (Check lapack Cholesky errors 220)
             }
1156
```

```
222. We begin with the symmetric matrix cases.
         \langle Cholesky lapack interface 218\rangle +=
1157
             template()
             void decompose(matrix \langle fortran :: double\_precision, unstructured, dense) *A)
1158
1159
                (Prepare for lapack Cholesky 219)
1160
               dpotrf(\&mode,\&n,A \neg storg() \neg memory(),\&m,\&status);
1161
               〈 Check lapack Cholesky errors 220〉
1162
             }
1163
                 \langle Cholesky lapack interface 218\rangle +\equiv
         223.
1164
             template()
             void decompose(\mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{fortran} :: \mathbf{real}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense}\rangle *A)
1165
1166
               (Prepare for lapack Cholesky 219)
1167
               spotrf(\&mode,\&n,A \neg storg() \neg memory(),\&m,\&status);
1168
               〈Check lapack Cholesky errors 220〉
1169
1170
             }
```

57

**224.** The QR decomposition. The last two decompositions worked with square matrices, decomposing them into matrices with some *structure* that made easy the task of solving linear systems. The QR decomposition, on the other hand, produces A = QR, where R is upper triangular and Q is *orthogonal*, that is, Q'Q = QQ' = I. This decomposition provides a straightforward way to solve the problem  $\min_x ||Ax - b||_2$ , and is also the basis for one of the most widely used algorithms for computing the SVD decomposition and the eigenvalues of a matrix.

```
/* Empty, waiting for export. */
        225.
               \langle qr.h 225 \rangle \equiv
         #ifndef __MATH_QR__
1171
         \#define __MATH_QR__ 1.0
1172
1173
         #include <math/math.h>
         #include <math/algebra.h>
1174
           namespace math {
1175
           namespace qr {
1176
              (QR prototypes 226)
1177
           } }
1178
         \#\mathbf{endif}
1179
```

**226.** The QR decomposition algorithm we will implement works by finding orthogonal matrices  $H_i$  such that  $H_n \cdots H_1 A = R$ , where R is upper triangular. The  $H_i$  matrices are called *Householder* matrices, and what they do is to selectively zero out elements of a column of A. We'll see how to compute these matrices later on. A straightforward algorithm would then be one that repeatedly computed and applied Householder transformations to the original matrix. This is exactly the algorithm we implement here until necessity arrives for pivoting.

```
\langle QR \text{ prototypes } 226 \rangle \equiv
                   template\langle class T, template\langle class \rangle class storage \rangle
1180
                   \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle \ \& decompose(\operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle \ *A)
1181
1182
                      \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ v(A \neg rows(), 1);
1183
                      \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ w(A \neg cols(), 1);
1184
1185
                      for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq A \rightarrow cols(); ++j) {
1186
1187
                           \langle Compute Householder vector for column i 227\rangle;
                           ⟨Apply Householder transformation 228⟩;
1188
1189
1190
                      return *A;
                   }
1191
             See also section 229.
```

This code is used in section 225.

**227.** A Householder reflection can in fact be represented by a single vector v and a scalar  $\beta$ . In fact, the definition of a Householder matrix is any n - by - n matrix P of the form

$$I - \frac{2}{v^T v} v v^T.$$

Synonyms are Householder reflection, Householder matrix. The vector v is called a *Householder vector*. Householder matrices are easily verified to be symmetric and orthogonal. If a vector x is multiplied by a Householder matrix, then it is reflected in the hyperplane defined by span  $\{v\}^{\perp}$ . In particular, suppose we have a vector x and want to zero out all but the first component, that is, we want Px to be a multiple of  $e_1$ . After some algebra we can see that

$$v = x \pm P\beta x^0{}_2e_1$$

gives the desired transformation. The following piece of code will compute a Householder vector such that v(1) = 1,  $\beta = 2/v^T v$ , and  $Px = P\beta x^0 e_1$ . The normalization of the first entry of the Householder vector is desirable because we can store it with one less component (which enables us to store them directly in the A matrix together with R). Also, we don't use the above formula because of numerical problems. We use instead

$$v_1 = x_1 - P\beta x_2^0 = \frac{-(x_2^2 + \dots + x_n^2)}{x_1 + P\beta x_2^0}$$

which is numerically more stable when  $x_1 > 0$ .

```
\langle Compute Householder vector for column j 227\rangle \equiv
               v.resize(A \rightarrow rows() - j + 1, 1);
1192
               v.entry(1) \leftarrow \mathbf{T}(0.0);
1193
               v.subm(2, v.rows()) \leftarrow A \neg subm(j+1, A.rows(), j, j);
1194
               T sigma \leftarrow dot(v, v);
1195
               v.entry(1) \leftarrow \mathbf{T}(1.0):
1196
               if (sigma \equiv 0) beta \leftarrow 0;
1197
               else {
1198
                  \mathbf{T} \ x \leftarrow A \neg get(j,j);
1199
                  T mu \leftarrow sqrt(sigma + x * x);
1200
                  v.entry(1) \leftarrow (x \leq 0 ? x - mu : -sigma/(x + mu));
1201
                  T v1 \leftarrow v(1);
1202
                  beta \leftarrow 2 * v1 * v1 / (sigma + v1 * v1):
1203
                  v /= v1;
1204
1205
               }
```

This code is used in section 226.

$$PA = (I - \beta vv^T)A = A - \beta vv^T A,$$

and  $vv^TAv^T = v(A^Tv)^T$ , which consists only of matrix-vector and vector-vector products. Thus, the Householder update requires only a vector-matrix multiplication and an outer product update. In our case, we can also make use of some facts: we know that v(1) = 1 and that a block of the A matrix is already zeroed out.

```
 \langle \text{Apply Householder transformation } 228 \rangle \equiv \\ \text{submatrix} \langle \text{matrix} \langle \text{T}, \text{unstructured}, \text{storage} \rangle \rangle \ Ablock(A, j, A \neg rows(), j, A \neg cols()); \\ \text{1207} \qquad w \leftarrow atxmul(Ablock, v, \& w); \\ \text{1208} \qquad (\text{void}) \ outerp\_update(\& Ablock, -beta, v, w); \\ \text{1209} \qquad \text{if} \ (j < A \neg rows()) \ A \neg subm(j+1, A \neg rows(), j, j) \leftarrow v.subm(2, v.rows()); \\ \text{This code is used in section } 226.
```

**229.** Solving linear equations. We now are in position to solve two important problems. The first is the so-called *least-squares problem*, where we find x that solves min  $||Ax - b||_2$ , where  $A \in \mathbf{R}^{m \times n}$  and m > n. In this case the system is *overdetermined*, and an exact solution to Ax = b may not exist.

The second problem occurs when  $A \in \mathbf{R}^{m \times n}$  and n > m. The system Ax = b either has an infinite number of solutios or none. If it does have one, we compute the *minimum norm* solution.

```
\langle QR \text{ prototypes } 226 \rangle + \equiv
                   template\langle class T, template\langle class \rangle class storage \rangle
1210
1211
                   \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle \ \& solve(\operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle
                                *A, matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, unstructured, dense\rangle *B\rangle
                   {
1212
                      index l \leftarrow B \neg cols();
1213
                      index m \leftarrow A \neg rows();
1214
                      index n \leftarrow A \neg cols();
1215
                      \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense} \rangle \ w(l, 1);
1216
                      if (m \ge n) {
1217
                          ⟨ Solve least squares problem 230⟩;
1218
1219
                      else {
1220
1221
                          (Solve minimum norm problem 233);
1222
                      return *B;
1223
                   }
1224
```

**230.** Least squares. The least squares problem is solved via a direct matrix decomposition. The solution matrix is guaranteed to be smaller than B and has the same number of columns, so we overwrite B with the solution and resize it accordingly before returning.

```
\langle Solve least squares problem 230\rangle \equiv 1225 (void) decompose(A); 1226 \langle Solve Qy = b 231\rangle; \langle Solve Rx = y 232\rangle; 1228 B-resize(n, l);
```

This code is used in section 229.

```
231. To solve Qy = b we have to remember that Q is orthogonal, so all we have to do is to compute y = Q^T b.
           \langle \text{ Solve } Qy = b \text{ 231} \rangle \equiv
               \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{storage} \rangle \ v(m, 1);
1229
               v.entry(1) \leftarrow \mathbf{T}(1);
1230
               for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq n; ++j) {
1231
                  v.resize(m-j+1,1);
1232
                  v.subm(2, v.rows()) \leftarrow A \rightarrow subm(j+1, m, j, j);
1233
                  submatrix \langle \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \rangle Bblock (B, j, m, 1, l);
1234
                  w \leftarrow atxmul(Bblock, v, \&w);
1235
                  outerp\_update(\&Bblock, -2/dot(v, v), v, w);
1236
1237
           This code is used in section 230.
                    The last part is just back substitution with an upper triangular matrix.
           \langle \text{ Solve } Rx = y \text{ 232} \rangle \equiv
1238
               for (index k \leftarrow 1; k \le l; ++k)
                  for (index i \leftarrow n; i \ge 1; --i) {
1239
                     T inner \leftarrow 0:
1240
                     for (index j \leftarrow i+1; j \leq n; ++j) inner += A \rightarrow get(i,j) * B \rightarrow get(j,k);
1241
                     if (\neg finite(B \neg entry(i, k) \leftarrow (B \neg get(i, k) - inner)/A \neg get(i, i))) throw error::rankdefficient();
1242
1243
           This code is used in section 230.
           233. Minimum norm. The minimum norm problem is solved through a decomposition of the trans-
           posed matrix. If Ax = b, then we take the decomposition of A^T and solve the system (QR)^T x = b. The
           matrix dimensions now will be Q \in \mathbf{R}^{n \times n} and R \in \mathbf{R}^{n \times m}. The matrix we'll work with is At, which is
           in \mathbf{R}^{n \times m}.
           \langle Solve minimum norm problem 233\rangle \equiv
               \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle \ At \leftarrow transpose(*A);
1244
               (void) decompose(\&At);
1245
               \langle \text{Solve } R^T y = b \text{ 234} \rangle;
1246
               \langle \text{ Solve } Q^T x = y \text{ 235} \rangle;
1247
           This code is used in section 229.
           234. Our system consists of R^TQ^Tx = b. We first solve R^Ty = b. This equation actually translates
           to \begin{bmatrix} R_1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{bmatrix} = b, so we have no means of determining y_2. This poses no problem since we can
           determine y_1 and that's all we need. We'll overwrite y_1 on B.
           \langle \text{ Solve } R^T y = b \text{ 234} \rangle \equiv
               for (index k \leftarrow 1; k \le l; ++k)
1248
                  for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq m; ++i) {
1249
                     T inner \leftarrow 0:
1250
                     for (index j \leftarrow 1; j < i; ++j) inner += At(j,i) * B \rightarrow get(j,k);
1251
                     if (\neg finite(B \neg entry(i, k) \leftarrow (B \neg get(i, k) - inner)/At.(i, i))) throw error::rankdefficient();
1252
1253
           This code is used in section 233.
```

**235.** Now we use the fact that Q is orthogonal, so that  $Q^T x = y$  translates to x = Qy. The only problem is that we don't have y, just  $y_1$ , so that we can't use the outerp\_update function here because the matrix dimensions wouldn't match.

```
\langle \text{ Solve } Q^T x = y \text{ 235 } \rangle \equiv
                 B \rightarrow resize(n, l);
1254
                 B \rightarrow subm(m+1, n, 1, l) \leftarrow \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle (n-m, l);
1255
                 \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle \ v(n, 1);
1256
                 v.entry(1) \leftarrow \mathbf{T}(1);
1257
                 for (index k \leftarrow m; k \ge 1; --k) {
1258
                    index nrows \leftarrow n - k + 1;
1259
1260
                    v.resize(nrows, 1);
                    v.subm(2, nrows) \leftarrow At.subm(k+1, n, k, k);
1261
                    submatrix \langle matrix \langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle \rangle \ Bblock(B, k, n, 1, l);
1262
                    w \leftarrow atxmul(Bblock, v, \&w);
1263
                    outerp\_update(\&Bblock, -2/dot(v, v), v, w);
1264
                 }
1265
```

This code is used in section 233.

1266

1267

12681269

1270

1271

12721273

1274

12751276

12771278

1279

#endif

/\* Empty, waiting for **export** \*/

**236.** Matrix creation functions. We have now the power of the definitions, but using only the basics is unhandy. If we want to create an identity matrix, for example, we should not expect to have to set the diagonal elements to 1 manually. In this part we define functions to create matrices of common use.

237. Eye. Following Matlab syntax, the function that creates the identity matrix is eye. How nice.

```
238. \langle \text{eye.h} \ 238 \rangle \equiv \\ \# \text{ifndef} \ \_\text{MATH\_EYE} \ \_ \\ \# \text{define} \ \_\text{MATH\_EYE} \ \_ 1.0 \\ \# \text{include} \ \langle \text{algorithm} \rangle \ /* \ \text{For } min. \ */ \\ \# \text{include} \ \langle \text{math/math.h} \rangle \\ \text{namespace math} \ \{ \\ \text{template} \langle matrix\_simple\_template \rangle \\ \text{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \text{structure}, \text{storage} \rangle \ eye(\text{const math}:: \text{index } rows, \text{const math}:: \text{index } cols) \\ \{ \\ \text{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \text{structure}, \text{storage} \rangle \ dest(rows, cols); \\ \text{for } (\text{math}:: \text{index } i \leftarrow 1; \ i \leq min(rows, cols); \ +i) \ dest.entry(i,i) \leftarrow \mathbf{T}(1); \\ \text{return } dest; \\ \} \\ \}
```

**239.** Ones. Following MATLAB syntax, the function that creates the matrix with ones all around is *ones*. How nice, again. Since we have a matrix constructor that sets values, whe function itself is nothing more than a matrix creation. For people used with MATLAB(or Scilab, or Octave, and so on) the use of ones in a program may seem more intuitive.

```
/* Empty, waiting for export */
          240.
                 \langle \, {\tt ones.h} \, 240 \, \rangle \equiv
           #ifndef __MATH_ONES__
1280
           \#define __MATH_ONES__ 1.0
1281
1282
           #include <math/math.h>
             namespace math {
1283
1284
                template \langle matrix\_simple\_template \rangle
                matrix (T, structure, storage) ones (const math::index rows, const math::index cols)
1285
1286
                   return matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{structure}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle (rows, cols, \mathbf{T}(1));
1287
1288
1289
1290
           \#\mathbf{endif}
```

- 241. Matrix functions.
- **242.** Determinant. The determinant of a matrix  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  is given by

$$\det(A) = \sum_{i=j}^{n} (-1)^{j+1} a_{1j} \det(A_{1j}),$$

where  $A_{1j}$  is an (n-1)-by-(n-1) matrix obtained by deleting the first row and jth comlumn of A. Computing the determinant this way would require O(n!) operations, which is unacceptable. Fortunately, we have  $\det(AB) = \det(A) \det(B)$ , and for a upper or lower triangular matrix  $\det(A) = \prod a_{ii}$ . With this in mind we are able to compute the determinant in  $2n^3/3$  operations via the LU decomposition: we have  $\det(A) = \det(LU) = \det(L) \det(U) = \det(U) = \prod u_{ii}$ . The only trick is that we have a permutted version, so we have to take into account the number of permutations. The LU decomposition function returns the necessary information.

```
\langle \det.h \quad 243 \rangle \equiv
           243.
            #ifndef __MATH_DET__
1291
            \#define __MATH_DET__ 1.00
1292
            #include <math/math.h>
1293
            #include <math/lu.h>
1294
1295
                namespace math {
                   \mathbf{template} \langle \mathit{matrix\_simple\_template} \rangle
1296
                   T det(\mathbf{const\ matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{structure}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle \& A)
1297
1298
                      \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle \ aux \leftarrow A;
1299
                      \mathbf{vector}\langle \mathbf{math} :: \mathbf{index} \rangle \ pivots;
1300
                      T determinant \leftarrow 0;
1301
                      try {
1302
                         determinant \leftarrow \mathbf{math} :: \mathbf{lu} :: decompose(\& aux, \& pivots);
1303
                         \mathbf{math} :: \mathbf{index} \ i \leftarrow 0;
1304
                         while (++i \le aux.rows()) determinant *= aux(i,i)
1305
1306
                      catch(math::error::singular e) \{ \}
1307
                      return determinant;
1308
1309
1310
1311
            #endif
```

/\* Empty, waiting for **export** \*/

**244.** Functions. Functions are things that take a matrix as argument and return a matrix. We will define them before functionals (which take vectors and return scalars) because, for optimization purposes, functionals are more useful but they need functions in order to be of use. Here we define the basic interface in a base class from which specific functionals will be derived.

```
/* Not until export */
               \langle functionbase.h 245\rangle \equiv
        245.
         #ifndef __MATH_FUNCTION__
1312
         #define __MATH_FUNCTION__ 1.00
1313
         #include <math/math.h>
1314
         #include <math/symmetric.h>
1315
1316
         #include <math/sparse.h>
           namespace math {
1317
             namespace function
1318
1319
                template \langle class T \rangle
1320
                class base {
1321
1322
                public:
                  (Function base class methods 246)
1323
1324
1325
1326
1327
         #endif
```

**246.** The first thing we do is to declare a virtual destructor, so that we can derive classes from the base class.

```
\langle Function base class methods 246\rangle \equiv virtual \simbase(void) \{ \} See also sections 247, 248, and 249.
```

This code is used in section 245.

1328

247. Before defining the interface we need to consider some points about functions (this rant will be repeated when defining functionals): first, a function should be able to get any kind of matrix as the point, that is, the x in f(x) could be sparse, dense and so on. Also, we should be able to create a list containing various types of functions. The impossibility of this ideal situation is summarized by Stroustrup: "A member template cannot be virtual." This is a design decision, and a wrong one in my point of view. We have then only two possibilities: either we make the **matrix** class derived, so we can pass pointers, or we fix the type of the parameter. The first option results in performance degradation, so we're stuck with the second. Fortunately most functions take vectors as arguments, so that matrix structures are not a big deal. We will assume that **dense** vectors are the best compromise. Also, we fix the return value to a **dense** and **unstructured** matrix because we consider that in most cases we'll be returning vectors. Storage for the result must be provided by the user.

**248.** If possible, a function should compute the Jacobian. If  $f: \mathbf{R}^n \to \mathbf{R}^m$ , then the Jacobian is a matrix  $J \in \mathbf{R}^{m \times n}$  defined by  $J_{ij} = df_i/dx_j$ . Here we face another interface decision: functions are supposed to be used to compute lots of points, that is, when you create a function, usually you want to evaluate it in a set of points, not just only one. If a evaluation method created storage for the result each time it was called, then we would be facing a serious performance threat. For this reason we require the user to pass the result variable as an argument. This requirement, in turn, makes the type of the result matrix fixed for the same reasons discussed above. The method returns the result (that is, dest), which is a useful behavior in certain applications, as for example in function compositions like f(g(x)). The size of the dest matrix at input should be checked by the method. This will be normally performed via the **matrix**::resize method. Since this method checks for same dimensions, the performance does not suffer too much.

 $\langle$  Function base class methods 246 $\rangle + \equiv$ 

1332

1333

1334

```
virtual matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ \& jacobian(\mathbf{const} \ \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ \& x, \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ *dest) \leftarrow 0;
```

**249.** The same thing is valid for the Hessian, except here we require the Hessian to be symmetric (which it is by definition). The same remarks about *dest* size made above are valid here. We provide two methods, one for **sparse** matrices (for large optimization problems it may be crucial to get a sparse version).

```
\langle Function base class methods 246\rangle + \equiv
```

```
virtual matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle &hess(const matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle &x, matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle *dest, const index i, const index j \leftarrow 1) \leftarrow 0; virtual matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse} \rangle &hess(const matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle &x, matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse} \rangle *dest, const index i, const index j \leftarrow 1) \leftarrow 0;
```

**250.** The gaxpy function. Our first functional is arguably the most simple. We define a function that computes the scalar gaxpy operation, that is, f(x) = Ax + b. This is also one of the most useful functions for optimization – think of  $Ax \prec b$ .

```
/* Empty, waiting for export */
               \langle function/gaxpy.h 251 \rangle \equiv
        251.
1335
         #ifndef __MATH_GAXPY_FUNCTION__
         #define __MATH_GAXPY_FUNCTION__ 1.00
1336
         #include <math/math.h>
1337
         #include <math/algebra.h>
1338
1339
         #include <math/functionbase.h>
           namespace math {
1340
1341
             namespace function
1342
               template \( matrix_simple_template \)
1343
               class gaxpy:public base\langle T \rangle {
1344
                  (Gaxpy function internal variables 252)
1345
1346
               public:
                  (Gaxpy function class methods 253)
1347
1348
1349
1350
1351
         #endif
```

```
a vector most times.
             \langle Gaxpy function internal variables 252\rangle \equiv
                  \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{structure}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle \ ay;
1352
                  matrix\langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle bee;
1353
             This code is used in section 251.
                       We provide a means to modify these values in two ways: by returning a reference to them and at the
             time of construction.
             \langle Gaxpy function class methods 253\rangle \equiv
                  \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{structure}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle \& A(\operatorname{void}) \ \{ \operatorname{return} \ ay; \ \}
1354
                  \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \& b(\operatorname{void}) \ \{ \ \operatorname{return} \ bee; \ \}
1355
                  \mathbf{gaxpy}(\mathbf{const} \ \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{structure}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle \ \&a, \mathbf{const} \ \mathbf{T} \ \&B)
1356
1357
                  : ay(a), bee(B) \{ \}
             See also sections 254, 255, and 256.
             This code is used in section 251.
             254. Now to the fun stuff. Evaluating is a simple task of calling some algebra functions.
             \langle Gaxpy function class methods 253 \rangle + \equiv
                  virtual matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& eval(\mathbf{const. matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle
1358
                               &x, matrix\langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle *dest)
1359
                  { return (\mathbf{gaxpy}(ay, x, \&(dest \rightarrow copy from(b)))); }
                        The Jacobian is simply A.
             \langle Gaxpy function class methods 253 \rangle + \equiv
                  virtual matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& jacobian(\mathbf{const}, \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle
1360
                               &x, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle *dest \rangle
1361
1362
                     return (*dest) \leftarrow ay;
                  }
1363
                        The hessian of an affine function is zero.
             \langle Gaxpy function class methods 253\rangle + \equiv
                  virtual matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle & hess(\mathbf{const}, \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle
1364
                               &x, matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle *dest, \mathbf{const} index, \mathbf{const} index \rangle
1365
                      dest \neg resize(x.rows(), x.rows());
1366
                      dest \rightarrow fill with (0);
1367
                     return *dest;
1368
1369
                  virtual matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse} \rangle \& hess(\mathbf{const.matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle
1370
                               \&x, \text{matrix}(\mathbf{T}, \text{symmetric}, \text{sparse}) *dest, \text{const index}, \text{const index})
1371
                      *dest \leftarrow \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse}\rangle(x.rows(), x.rows());
1372
                     return *dest;
1373
1374
```

To compute a gaxpy operation we need two parameters, the A and b matrices. We assume b will be

257. Functionals. Functionals are the MATH library representation of functionals. In the most simple situation, functionals take arguments and return the value of a function at some point. In other situations, such as optimization algorithms, we may want the gradient and/or the Hessian of the function at some point. Here we define the basic interface in a base class from which specific functionals will be derived.

```
/* Not until export */
                \langle functionalbase.h 258 \rangle \equiv
        258.
         #ifndef __MATH_FN__
1375
         \#define __MATH_FN__
1376
         #include <math/math.h>
1377
         #include <math/symmetric.h>
1378
1379
         #include <math/sparse.h>
           namespace math {
1380
             namespace functional
1381
1382
                template \langle class T \rangle
1383
                class base {
1384
1385
                public:
                  (Functional base class methods 259)
1386
                };
1387
1388
1389
1390
         #endif
```

**259.** The first thing we do is to declare a virtual destructor, so that we can derive classes from the base class.

```
\langle Functional base class methods 259\rangle \equiv virtual \simbase(void) \{\} See also sections 260, 261, and 262.
```

This code is used in section 258.

1391

**260.** Before defining the interface we need to consider some points about functionals: first, a functional should be able to get any kind of matrix as the point, that is, the x in f(x) could be sparse, dense and so on. Also, we should be able to create a list containing various types of functionals. The impossibility of this ideal situation is summarized by Stroustrup: "A member template cannot be virtual." This is a design decision, and a wrong one in my point of view. We have then only two possibilities: either we make the **matrix** class derived, so we can pass pointers, or we fix the type of the parameter. The first option results in performance degradation, so we're stuck with the second. Fortunately most functionals take vectors as arguments, so that matrix structures are not a big deal. We will assume that **dense** vectors are the best compromise.

```
\langle Functional base class methods 259 \rangle +=
1392 T operator()(const matrix\langleT, unstructured, dense\rangle &x) { return eval(x); }
1393 virtual T eval(const matrix\langleT, unstructured, dense\rangle &x) \leftarrow 0;
```

1394

**261.** If possible, a functional should compute the gradient at a point. Here we face another interface decision: functionals are supposed to be used to compute lots of points, that is, when you create a functional, usually you want to evaluate it in a set of points, not just only one. If a evaluation method created storage for the result each time it was called, then we would be facing a serious performance threat. For this reason we require the user to pass the result variable as an argument. This requirement, in turn, makes the type of the result matrix fixed for the same reasons discussed above. The method returns the result (that is, dest), which is a useful behavior in certain applications, as for example in function compositions like f(g(x)). The size of the dest matrix at input should be checked by the method. This will be normally performed via the matrix :: init method. Since this method checks for same dimensions, the performance does not suffer too much.

```
\langle Functional base class methods 259\rangle +\equiv virtual matrix\langleT, unstructured, dense\rangle & grad (const matrix\langleT, unstructured, dense\rangle & grad (const matrix\langleT, unstructured, dense\rangle & dest\rangle \leftarrow 0;
```

**262.** The same thing is valid for the Hessian, except here we require the Hessian to be symmetric (which it is by definition). The same remarks about *dest* size made above are valid here. We provide two methods, one for **sparse** matrices (for large optimization problems it may be crucial to get a sparse version).

```
\langle \text{Functional base class methods } 259 \rangle +\equiv \\ \text{virtual matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle & \text{$hess$}(\mathbf{const matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \\ & & \text{$\&x$, matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle & \text{$dest$}) \leftarrow 0; \\ \text{1396} & & \text{virtual matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse} \rangle & \text{$hess$}(\mathbf{const matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \\ & & & \text{$\&x$, matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse} \rangle & \text{$\&dest$}) \leftarrow 0; \\ \end{cases}
```

**263.** The gaxpy functional. Our first functional is arguably the most simple. We define a functional that computes the scalar gaxpy operation, that is,  $f(x) = a^T x + b$ .

```
264.
                 \langle functional/gaxpy.h 264 \rangle \equiv
          #ifndef __MATH_GAXPY_FUNCTIONAL__
1397
          #define __MATH_GAXPY_FUNCTIONAL__
1398
          #include <math/algebra.h>
1399
          #include <math/functionalbase.h>
1400
             namespace math {
1401
               namespace functional
1402
1403
1404
                  template \langle matrix\_simple\_template \rangle
                  class gaxpy :public base\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle {
1405
                     (Gaxpy functional internal variables 265)
1406
                  public:
1407
1408
                     (Gaxpy functional class methods 266)
1409
1410
1411
          #endif
1412
                 To compute a gaxpy operation we need two parameters, the a vector and the scalar b.
         \langle Gaxpv functional internal variables 265 \rangle \equiv
1413
             \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{structure}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle \ ay;
             T bee:
1414
```

/\* Empty, waiting for **export** \*/

This code is used in section 264.

(0)

**266.** We provide a means to modify these values in two ways: by returning a reference to them and at the time of construction.

```
\langle Gaxpy functional class methods 266\rangle \equiv
                 \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{structure}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle \& a(\operatorname{void}) \ \{ \operatorname{return} \ ay; \ \}
1415
                 T \& b(void) \{ return bee; \}
1416
1417
                 \mathbf{gaxpy}(\mathbf{const} \ \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{structure}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle \ \& A, \mathbf{const} \ \mathbf{T} \ \& B)
                 : ay(A), bee(B) {}
1418
             See also sections 267, 268, and 269.
             This code is used in section 264.
                       Now to the fun stuff. Evaluating is a simple task of calling some algebra functions.
             \langle Gaxpy functional class methods 266 \rangle + \equiv
                 virtual T eval(const matrix \langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle \& x)
1419
1420
                  { return dot(ay, x) + bee; }
                      The gradient is simply a.
             \langle Gaxpy functional class methods 266\rangle +\equiv
                  virtual matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& grad(\mathbf{const} \ \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle
1421
                               &x, matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& dest \rangle
                  { return (dest \leftarrow ay); }
1422
             269.
                       The hessian of an affine function is zero.
             \langle Gaxpy functional class methods 266 \rangle + \equiv
                  virtual matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle & hess(\mathbf{const}, \mathbf{matrix}, \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense})
1423
                               &x, \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \& dest)
1424
                     dest.init(x.rows(), x.rows());
1425
1426
                     dest.fillwith(0);
                     return dest;
1427
1428
                  virtual matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse} \rangle \& hess(\mathbf{const.matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle
1429
                               &x, matrix\langle T, symmetric, sparse \rangle \& dest)
1430
                     dest \leftarrow \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse} \rangle (x.rows(), x.rows());
1431
                     return dest;
1432
                 }
1433
```

**270.** The linear combination of functionals. Our next definition is a functional that is the weighed sum of other specified functionals. It will be useful, for example, in optimization methods (when summing barrier functions).

```
/* Empty, waiting for export */
```

```
\langle functional/linear.h 271 \rangle \equiv
          #ifndef __MATH_LINEAR_FUNCTIONAL__
1434
          #define __MATH_LINEAR_FUNCTIONAL__
1435
          #include <algorithm>
1436
          #include <math/functionalbase.h>
1437
             namespace math {
1438
               namespace functional
1439
1440
                  template \langle class T \rangle
1441
                  class linear:public base\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle {
1442
                     (Linear combination of functionals internal variables 272)
1443
1444
                     (Linear combination of functionals class methods 273)
1445
1446
                  };
1447
1448
          #endif
1449
         272.
                 The functionals to be added are stored in a vector of pairs of weights and functionals.
         \langle Linear combination of functionals internal variables 272\rangle \equiv
             typedef std::pair\langle T, base \langle T \rangle * \rangle element_type;
1450
             vector(element_type) elements;
1451
1452
             typedef typename vector (element_type)::iterator iterator;
         See also sections 278 and 280.
         This code is used in section 271.
         273. Adding elements to the sum is a matter of passing weights and functional pointers to the add function.
         We also allow the user to specify initial values at the time of construction.
         \langle Linear combination of functionals class methods 273\rangle \equiv
             linear(void) { }
1453
             linear(base\langle T \rangle *elment, T weight \leftarrow 1) \{ add(elment, weight); \}
1454
             linear(const\ vector\langle element\_type\rangle\ \&elem)\ \{\ elements \leftarrow elem;\ \}
1455
             void add(\mathbf{base}\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle *elment, \mathbf{T} weight \leftarrow 1)
1456
             {
1457
               if (weight \equiv 0) return;
1458
                elements.push_back(element_type(weight, elment));
1459
1460
             void add(\mathbf{const\ linear}\langle \mathbf{T}\rangle *elment, \mathbf{T}\ weight \leftarrow 1)
1461
1462
               for (int i \leftarrow 0; i \neq elment \neg size(); ++i) add(elment \neg get\_term(i), weight * elment \neg get\_weight(i));
1463
1464
         See also sections 274, 275, 276, 277, 279, and 281.
         This code is used in section 271.
         274. We can remove functionals from the end of the list.
         \langle Linear combination of functionals class methods 273\rangle + \equiv
             void pop_back(void)
1465
1466
                elements.pop_back();
1467
```

```
We will need to modify weights
           \langle Linear combination of functionals class methods 273\rangle + \equiv
               void set\_weight(int i, T value) \{ elements[i].first \leftarrow value; \}
1469
               T get_weight(int i) const { return elements[i].first; }
1470
               void set\_term(\textbf{int}\ i, \textbf{base}\langle \textbf{T} \rangle *value) \ \{\ elements[i].second \leftarrow value; \ \}
1471
1472
               \mathbf{base}\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle * get\_term(\mathbf{int}\ i) \mathbf{const}\ \{\mathbf{return}\ elements[i].second;\ \}
1473
               int size(void) const { return elements.size(); }
                    The pointers will be erased, but not the functionals they point to, when the linear is deleted.
           \langle Linear combination of functionals class methods 273\rangle + \equiv
1474
               \simlinear(void) { elements.erase(elements.begin(), elements.end()); }
                    Now to evaluation. Pretty simple, as you may expect. The default behavior is to return zero if there
           are no functionals in the list.
           \langle Linear combination of functionals class methods 273\rangle + \equiv
1475
               T eval(\mathbf{const\ matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense}\rangle \ \&x)
1476
                  T result \leftarrow 0;
1477
                 for (iterator i \leftarrow elements.begin(); i \neq elements.end(); ++i) result += i \neg first * i \neg second \neg eval(x);
1478
1479
                  return result;
1480
                   For the gradient, the default when no elements are present is also to return zero. We set up an
           internal variable aux so that we don't need to create/resize vectors each time a new gradient is computed.
           Also, we test for unity weights in order to save computation.
           \langle Linear combination of functionals internal variables 272\rangle + \equiv
1481
               matrix\langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle aux;
                    \langle Linear combination of functionals class methods 273\rangle + \equiv
               \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \ \& \operatorname{grad}(\operatorname{const} \ \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
1482
                          &x, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& dest \rangle
1483
                 if (elements.size() \equiv 0) {
1484
                     dest.resize(x.rows(), 1);
1485
                     dest.fillwith(0.0);
1486
                     return dest;
1487
1488
1489
                  iterator i \leftarrow elements.begin();
                  i \rightarrow second \rightarrow grad(x, dest);
1490
                  if (i \rightarrow first \neq 1) dest *= i \rightarrow first;
1491
                  for (i++; i \neq elements.end(); ++i) {
1492
                     i \rightarrow second \rightarrow grad(x, aux);
1493
                     if (i \rightarrow first \neq 1) aux *= i \rightarrow first;
1494
1495
                     dest += aux;
1496
                 return dest;
1497
1498
```

280. We follow the same algorithm for the Hessian, again testing for unity weights in order to save computation.

```
\langle Linear combination of functionals internal variables 272\rangle + \equiv
1499
                  \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ Hdense;
                  matrix \langle T, symmetric, sparse \rangle Hsparse;
1500
                         \langle Linear combination of functionals class methods 273\rangle + \equiv
                   \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle & \operatorname{hess}(\operatorname{const} \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
1501
                                &x, matrix\langle T, symmetric, dense \rangle \& dest)
1502
                     if (elements.size() \equiv 0) {
1503
1504
                         dest.resize(x.rows(), x.rows());
                          dest.fillwith(0.0);
1505
                         return dest;
1506
1507
                     iterator i \leftarrow elements.begin();
1508
                      i \rightarrow second \rightarrow hess(x, dest);
1509
                     if (i \rightarrow first \neq 1) dest *= i \rightarrow first;
1510
                      for (i++; i \neq elements.end(); ++i) {
1511
                         i \rightarrow second \rightarrow hess(x, Hdense);
1512
                         if (i \rightarrow first \neq 1) Hdense *= i \rightarrow first;
1513
1514
                         dest += Hdense;
1515
1516
                      return dest;
1517
                  \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{sparse}\rangle \ \& hess(\operatorname{const} \ \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
1518
                                \&x, \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse} \rangle \&dest)
1519
                     if (elements.size() \equiv 0) {
1520
                          dest \leftarrow \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse}\rangle(x.rows(), x.rows());
1521
1522
                         return dest;
1523
                     iterator i \leftarrow elements.begin();
1524
                      i \rightarrow second \rightarrow hess(x, dest);
1525
                     if (i \rightarrow first \neq 1) dest *= i \rightarrow first;
1526
                     for (i++; i \neq elements.end(); ++i) {
1527
                         i \rightarrow second \rightarrow hess(x, Hsparse);
1528
                         if (i \rightarrow first \neq 1) Hsparse *= i \rightarrow first;
1529
1530
                          dest += Hsparse;
1531
1532
                     return dest;
1533
```

**282.** The quadratic functional. The next functional we implement is the quadratic. It computes the value of  $f(x) = x^T P x + p^T x + \pi$ . We will require P to be symmetric. If it is not, it is always possible to find a new P that results in the same functional. To the code:

```
/* Empty, waiting for export */
```

```
287. The gradient is given by 2Px + p.
            \langle \text{Quadratic functional methods } 285 \rangle + \equiv
                 virtual matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& grad(\mathbf{const} \ \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle
1566
                             &x, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle & dest)
1567
                    return gaxpy(Pee, x * 2, &(dest.copyfrom(pee)));
1568
1569
            288.
                       And the Hessian is simply 2P.
            \langle \text{ Quadratic functional methods } 285 \rangle + \equiv
                 virtual matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle &hess(const matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle
1570
                              &x, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& dest \rangle
1571
1572
                    dest \leftarrow Pee:
                    return dest *= 2;
1573
1574
                 virtual matrix\langle T, symmetric, sparse\rangle & hess (const. matrix\langle T, unstructured, dense\rangle
1575
                              \&x, \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse} \rangle \&dest)
1576
                    dest \leftarrow Pee;
1577
                    return dest *= 2:
1578
1579
                 }
```

**289.** The norm-2 error. This functional computes, for a given function f and a vector y, the value of

$$||y_i - f_i(x)||^2.$$

This is an extremely useful functional for optimization problems: suppose you trying to approximate some set of data y to a function f that depends on the parameters x – then minimizing this functional is what you want to do. Note the confusing naming (of which we cannot escape). Normally the set of data is  $(x_i, y_i)$ , but in our case the  $x_i$  is stored in the function f itself – they are not the argument to f.

```
\langle functional/norm2err.h 290 \rangle \equiv
         #ifndef __MATH_NORM2ERR_FUNCTIONAL__
1580
         #define __MATH_NORM2ERR_FUNCTIONAL__
1581
1582
         #include <math/algebra.h>
         #include <math/function.h>
1583
         #include <math/functionalbase.h>
1584
           namespace math {
1585
              namespace functional
1586
1587
                template\langle class T, template\langle class \rangle class storage \rangle
1588
                class norm2err:public base\langle T \rangle {
1589
                   (Norm-2 error functional internal variables 291)
1590
                public:
1591
1592
                   (Norm-2 error functional class methods 292)
1593
                };
1594
1595
         #endif
1596
```

**291.** The internal matrix variables are the vector y, two auxiliar vectors for computing the value and gradient of the function, and an auxiliar matrix for computing the Hessian. The other internal variable is the approximating function.

```
\langle \text{Norm-2 error functional internal variables 291} \rangle \equiv
                 \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense} \rangle Y, \ aux, \ fval;
1597
                 \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle H;
1598
                 function :: base \langle \mathbf{T} \rangle *F;
1599
            This code is used in section 290.
                       We can change all the values at any time or at construction.
             \langle \text{Norm-2 error functional class methods } 292 \rangle \equiv
                 \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense} \rangle \ \& y(\operatorname{void}) \ \{ \operatorname{return} \ Y; \ \}
1600
                 function::base\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle * \& f(\mathbf{void}) \{ \mathbf{return} \ F; \}
1601
                 norm2err(const\ matrix \langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle\ \&newy, function :: base \langle T \rangle *newf \leftarrow 0)
1602
                 : Y(newy), F(newf) \{ \}
1603
1604
                 norm2err(function :: base \langle T \rangle *newf \leftarrow 0)
                 : F(newf) \{ \}
1605
            See also sections 293, 294, 295, and 296.
            This code is used in section 290.
            293. Now to the eval function.
             \langle Norm-2 \text{ error functional class methods } 292 \rangle + \equiv
                 virtual T eval(const \ matrix \langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle \& x)
1606
1607
                    fval \leftarrow F \neg eval(x, \& fval);
1608
                    fval -= Y:
1609
                    return dot(fval, fval);
1610
                 }
1611
            294.
                        The gradient is given by
                                                                                  2Df(x)^T(f-y)
            \langle Norm-2 \text{ error functional class methods } 292 \rangle + \equiv
                 virtual matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& grad(\mathbf{const} \ \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle
1612
                              &x, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& dest \rangle
1613
                    fval \leftarrow F \rightarrow eval(x, \& fval);
1614
                    fval -= Y;
1615
                    F \rightarrow jacobian(x, \& aux);
1616
                     atxmul(aux, fval, \& dest);
1617
                     dest *= 2;
1618
                    return dest;
1619
                 }
1620
```

**295.** The Hessian is a little bit more complicated. It is given by

$$2\sum_{i} (f_{i}(x) - y_{i})\nabla^{2} f_{i}(x) + 2Df(x)^{T} Df(x).$$

```
We have all the necessary algebraic functions already defined, though.
           \langle Norm-2 error functional class methods 292\rangle +\equiv
               virtual matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle & hess(\mathbf{const}, \mathbf{matrix}) \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle
1621
                          &x, matrix \langle T, symmetric, dense \rangle \& dest)
1622
                  outterp(F \rightarrow jacobian(x, \& aux), \& dest);
1623
                  fval \leftarrow F \neg eval(x, \& fval);
1624
                  fval -= Y;
1625
                  for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq Y.rows(); ++i) {
1626
                     H \leftarrow F \rightarrow hess(x, \&H, i);
1627
                     H *= fval(i);
1628
                     dest += H;
1629
1630
                  dest *= 2;
1631
                  return dest;
1632
1633
               }
                    \langle Norm-2 \text{ error functional class methods } 292 \rangle + \equiv
               virtual matrix\langle T, symmetric, sparse \rangle & hess(const matrix \langle T, unstructured, dense)
1634
                          &x, matrix\langle T, symmetric, sparse \rangle \& dest)
1635
                  outterp(F \rightarrow jacobian(x, aux), \& dest);
1636
                  fval \leftarrow F \rightarrow eval(x, \& fval);
1637
                  fval -= Y;
1638
                  for (index i \leftarrow 1; i < Y.rows(); ++i) {
1639
                     H \leftarrow F \rightarrow hess(x, \&H, i);
1640
                     H *= fval(i);
1641
                     dest += H;
1642
1643
                  dest *= 2;
1644
1645
                  return dest;
               }
1646
```

297. The product of two functionals.

```
\langle functional/prod.h 298 \rangle \equiv
            #ifndef __MATH_PROD_FUNCTIONAL__
1647
            #define __MATH_PROD_FUNCTIONAL__
1648
                                                                  1.00
            #include <math/functionalbase.h>
1649
               namespace math {
1650
                  namespace functional
1651
1652
                     template \langle class T \rangle
1653
                     class prod:public base\langle T \rangle {
1654
                        (Product of functionals internal variables 299)
1655
                     public:
1656
                        (Product of functionals class methods 300)
1657
1658
1659
1660
            #endif
1661
                    \langle Product of functionals internal variables 299\rangle \equiv
               typedef base\langle T \rangle *element_type;
1662
1663
               element_type f, g;
           See also sections 302 and 304.
           This code is used in section 298.
                    \langle Product of functionals class methods 300\rangle \equiv
1664
               prod(element\_type \ new\_f, element\_type \ new\_g): f(new\_f), g(new\_g) \ \{ \ \}
           See also sections 301, 303, and 305.
           This code is used in section 298.
                    \langle Product of functionals class methods 300\rangle + \equiv
               T eval(const\ matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, unstructured, dense) & x)  { return\ f \rightarrow eval(x) * g \rightarrow eval(x); }
1665
                    The gradient of the product is given by f\nabla g + g\nabla f.
           \langle Product of functionals internal variables 299\rangle +\equiv
1666
               matrix\langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle aux;
                   \langle Product of functionals class methods 300\rangle + \equiv
               \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \ \& \operatorname{grad}(\operatorname{const} \ \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
1667
                          \&x, \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \&dest)
1668
                  f \rightarrow qrad(x, aux);
1669
                  aux *= q \rightarrow eval(x);
1670
                  g \rightarrow grad(x, dest);
1671
                  dest *= f \rightarrow eval(x);
1672
                  return dest += aux;
1673
1674
               }
                    The Hessian is given by g\nabla^2 f + \nabla f \nabla^T g + \nabla g \nabla^T f + f \nabla^2 g.
           \langle Product of functionals internal variables 299\rangle +\equiv
               matrix \langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle xua;
1675
1676
               matrix\langle T, symmetric, dense \rangle Hdense;
1677
               matrix \langle T, symmetric, sparse \rangle Hsparse;
```

```
\langle Product of functionals class methods 300\rangle + \equiv
                \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \ \& \operatorname{hess}(\operatorname{const} \ \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
1678
                            &x, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& dest \rangle
                {
1679
                    f \rightarrow hess(x, dest);
1680
1681
                    dest *= g \rightarrow eval(x);
                   g \rightarrow hess(x, Hdense);
1682
                    Hdense *= f \rightarrow eval(x);
1683
                    dest += Hdense;
1684
                   f \rightarrow grad(x, aux);
1685
                   g \rightarrow grad(x, xua);
1686
                    dest += xyyx(aux, xua, \&Hdense);
1687
                   return dest;
1688
                }
1689
                \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{sparse}\rangle \& hess(\operatorname{const} \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
1690
                            &x, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse} \rangle \& dest \rangle
1691
                    f \rightarrow hess(x, dest);
1692
                    dest *= g \neg eval(x);
1693
                   g \rightarrow hess(x, Hsparse);
1694
                   Hsparse *= f \rightarrow eval(x);
1695
                    dest += Hsparse;
1696
1697
                   f \rightarrow qrad(x, aux);
                   g \rightarrow grad(x, xua);
1698
                    dest += xyyx(aux, xua, \&Hsparse);
1699
                   return dest;
1700
                }
1701
            306.
                      The ratio of two functionals.
                      /* Empty, waiting for export */
                      \langle functional/ratio.h 307 \rangle \equiv
            307.
             #ifndef __MATH_RATIO_FUNCTIONAL__
1702
             #define __MATH_RATIO_FUNCTIONAL__ 1.00
1703
             #include <math/functionalbase.h>
1704
                namespace math {
1705
                   namespace functional
1706
1707
                       template\langle class T \rangle
1708
                       class ratio:public base\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle {
1709
                          (Ratio of functionals internal variables 308)
1710
                       public:
1711
                          (Ratio of functionals class methods 309)
1712
1713
                       };
1714
1715
             #endif
1716
```

MATH LIBRARY (Version alpha 3-22-2002)

(§308)

THE RATIO OF TWO FUNCTIONALS

## 314. The power functional.

```
82 (§315) THE POWER FUNCTIONAL
```

```
\langle \text{functional/power.h} \quad 315 \rangle \equiv
            #ifndef __MATH_POWER_FUNCTIONAL__
1766
            #define __MATH_POWER_FUNCTIONAL__
1767
            #include <math.h>
1768
            #include <math/functionalbase.h>
1769
              namespace math {
1770
                 namespace functional
1771
1772
                    template\langle class~T\rangle
1773
                    class power:public base\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle {
1774
                        (Power of a functional internal variables 316)
1775
1776
                        (Power of a functional class methods 317)
1777
1778
                    };
1779
1780
            #endif
1781
          316.
           \langle Power of a functional internal variables 316\rangle \equiv
               typedef base\langle T \rangle *element_type;
1782
              element_type f;
1783
1784
              double exponent;
          See also section 321.
          This code is used in section 315.
          317.
           \langle Power of a functional class methods 317\rangle \equiv
1785
              power(element_type new_f, double new_e): f(new_f), exponent(new_e) { }
          See also sections 318, 320, and 322.
          This code is used in section 315.
          318.
           \langle \text{Power of a functional class methods 317} \rangle + \equiv
              T eval(const\ matrix \langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle \& x)
1786
1787
                 \mathbf{T} result \leftarrow f \neg eval(x);
1788
                 return pow(result, exponent);
1789
              }
1790
          319.
                    The gradient of the power is given by nf^{n-1}\nabla f.
                    \langle Power of a functional class methods 317\rangle +\equiv
               \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \& \operatorname{grad}(\operatorname{const} \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
1791
                         &x, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& dest \rangle
1792
                 T result \leftarrow f \neg eval(x);
1793
                 result \leftarrow exponent * pow(result, exponent - 1);
1794
                  f \rightarrow qrad(x, dest);
1795
1796
                 return dest *= result;
1797
```

```
321. The Hessian is given by nf^{n-1}\nabla^2 f + n(n-1)f^{n-2}\nabla f\nabla f^T.
           \langle Power of a functional internal variables 316\rangle +\equiv
               matrix\langle T, symmetric, dense \rangle Hdense;
1798
               matrix\langle T, symmetric, sparse \rangle Hsparse;
1799
               matrix\langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle aux;
1800
           322.
                     \langle Power of a functional class methods 317\rangle +\equiv
1801
                \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \ \& \operatorname{hess}(\operatorname{const} \ \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
                           &x, matrix\langle T, symmetric, dense \rangle \& dest)
1802
                   T result \leftarrow f \neg eval(x);
1803
                  if (result \equiv 0 \land exponent \geq 2) {
1804
1805
                      dest.resize(x.rows(), x.rows());
                      dest.fillwith(0.0);
1806
                      return dest;
1807
1808
                  if (result \equiv 0 \land exponent < 2) throw error::domain();
1809
                   f \rightarrow qrad(x, aux);
1810
                   outerp(aux, & Hdense);
1811
                   Hdense *= (exponent - 1)/result;
1812
                   f \rightarrow hess(x, dest);
1813
                   dest += Hdense;
1814
                  return dest *= pow(result, exponent - 1) * exponent;
1815
1816
                \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{sparse}\rangle & hess(\operatorname{const} \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
1817
                           &x, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse} \rangle \& dest \rangle
1818
                      result \leftarrow f \neg eval(x);
1819
                  if (result \equiv 0 \land exponent \geq 2) {
1820
                      dest.resize(x.rows(), x.rows());
1821
                      dest.fillwith(0.0);
1822
1823
                      return dest;
1824
                   if (result \equiv 0 \land exponent < 2) throw error::domain();
1825
                   f \rightarrow qrad(x, aux);
1826
                   outerp(aux, \& Hsparse);
1827
1828
                   Hsparse *= (exponent - 1)/result;
                   f \rightarrow hess(x, dest);
1829
                   dest += Hsparse;
1830
                   return dest *= pow(result, exponent - 1) * exponent;
1831
               }
1832
           323.
                     The entropy of a functional.
```

```
84 (\S 324) The entropy of a functional
```

```
\langle functional/entr.h 324 \rangle \equiv
            #ifndef __MATH_ENTROPY_FUNCTIONAL__
1833
            #define __MATH_ENTROPY_FUNCTIONAL__
1834
            #include <math.h>
1835
            #include <math/functionalbase.h>
1836
1837
              namespace math {
                 namespace functional
1838
1839
                    template \langle class T \rangle
1840
                    class entr:public base\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle {
1841
                        (Entropy of a functional internal variables 325)
1842
1843
                        (Entropy of a functional class methods 326)
1844
1845
                    };
1846
1847
            #endif
1848
                   \langle Entropy of a functional internal variables 325\rangle \equiv
          325.
              typedef base\langle T \rangle *element_type;
1849
              element_type f;
1850
          See also section 330.
          This code is used in section 324.
                    \langle Entropy of a functional class methods 326\rangle \equiv
1851
              entr(element\_type new\_f):f(new\_f) \{ \}
          See also sections 327, 329, and 331.
          This code is used in section 324.
                    \langle Entropy of a functional class methods 326\rangle + \equiv
              T eval(\mathbf{const\ matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense}\rangle \& x)
1852
1853
                 T result \leftarrow f \neg eval(x);
1854
                 if (result \le 0) throw error::domain();
1855
                 return - result * :: log(result);
1856
1857
              }
          328.
                    The gradient of the entropy is given by -(1 + \log f)\nabla f.
                    \langle Entropy of a functional class methods 326\rangle + \equiv
               \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \& \operatorname{grad}(\operatorname{const} \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
1858
                         &x, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& dest \rangle
1859
                 T result \leftarrow f \neg eval(x);
1860
                 if (result \le 0) throw error::domain();
1861
                 f \neg grad(x, dest);
1862
                 return dest *= -(::log(result) + 1);
1863
1864
```

```
The Hessian is given by -(1 + \log f)\nabla^2 f - (1/f)\nabla f\nabla^T f.
            \langle Entropy of a functional internal variables 325\rangle + \equiv
                matrix\langle T, symmetric, dense \rangle Hdense;
1865
                 matrix\langle T, symmetric, sparse \rangle Hsparse;
1866
                matrix\langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle \ aux;
1867
                       \langle Entropy of a functional class methods 326\rangle + \equiv
                 \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle & \operatorname{hess}(\operatorname{const} \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
1868
                             &x, matrix\langle T, symmetric, dense \rangle \& dest)
1869
                    T result \leftarrow f \neg eval(x);
1870
                    if (result \le 0) throw error::domain();
1871
                    f \rightarrow grad(x, aux);
1872
                    outerp(aux, \&Hdense);
1873
                    Hdense /= (-result);
1874
                    f \rightarrow hess(x, dest);
1875
                    dest *= -(::log(result) + 1);
1876
                    return dest += Hdense;
1877
1878
                 \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{sparse}\rangle \& hess(\operatorname{const} \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
1879
                             &x, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse} \rangle \& dest \rangle
1880
                    T result \leftarrow f \neg eval(x);
1881
                    if (result \le 0) throw error::domain();
1882
                    f \rightarrow grad(x, aux);
1883
                    outerp(aux, &Hsparse);
1884
                    Hsparse /= (-result);
1885
                    f \rightarrow hess(x, dest);
1886
                    dest *= -(::log(result) + 1);
1887
                    return dest += Hsparse;
1888
1889
                 }
```

**Relative entropy.** The relative entropy (also known as Kullback Leibler distance) function is given by  $x \log x/y$ . The relative entropy is a measure of how much do we loose for assuming that the distribution of some random variable is y when the true distribution is x. If we knew x, then we could describe the random variable with a code with average description length  $\mathbf{entr}(x)$ . If we use y, however, we would need  $\mathbf{entr}(x) + \mathbf{relentr}(x, y)$  to describe the variable.

```
86
               (\S 333)
                           RELATIVE ENTROPY
                  \langle functional/relentr.h 333 \rangle \equiv
          #ifndef __MATH_RELATIVE_ENTROPY_FUNCTIONAL__
1890
          #define __MATH_RELATIVE_ENTROPY_FUNCTIONAL__ 1.00
1891
          #include <math.h>
1892
          #include <math/functionalbase.h>
1893
             namespace math { namespace functional {
1894
                template\langle class T \rangle
1895
               class relentr : public base\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle {
1896
                   (Relative entropy functional internal variables 334)
1897
1898
                  ⟨ Relative entropy functional class methods 335⟩
1899
1900
             } }
1901
          #endif
1902
                  \langle Relative entropy functional internal variables 334\rangle \equiv
             typedef base\langle T \rangle *element_type;
1903
1904
             element_type f, q;
         See also sections 337 and 339.
         This code is used in section 333.
                  \langle Relative entropy functional class methods 335\rangle \equiv
             relentr(element_type new_f, element_type new_g)
1905
1906
             : f(new\_f), g(new\_g) \{ \}
         See also sections 336, 338, and 340.
         This code is used in section 333.
                  \langle Relative entropy functional class methods 335\rangle + \equiv
             T eval(const \ matrix \langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle \& x)
1907
1908
                T fval \leftarrow f \neg eval(x);
1909
                T gval \leftarrow g \rightarrow eval(x);
1910
               if (qval \le 0 \lor fval \le 0) throw error::domain();
1911
1912
               return fval * :: log(fval/gval);
1913
             }
                  The gradient of the relative entropy is given by (1 + \log(f/g))\nabla f - (f/g)\nabla g.
          \langle Relative entropy functional internal variables 334\rangle + \equiv
1914
             \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ auxvec;
```

```
\langle Relative entropy functional class methods 335\rangle + \equiv
                 matrix\langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle \& grad(const matrix\langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle
1915
                             &x, matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& dest
                 {
1916
                    \mathbf{T} \ fval \leftarrow f \neg eval(x);
1917
                    T gval \leftarrow g \neg eval(x);
1918
                    if (gval \le 0 \lor fval \le 0) throw error::domain();
1919
                    g \rightarrow grad(x, auxvec);
1920
                    auxvec *= fval/gval;
1921
                    f \neg grad(x, dest);
1922
                    dest *= (:: log(fval/gval) + 1);
1923
1924
                    return dest = auxvec;
                 }
1925
                     The Hessian is given by (1 + \log(f/g))\nabla^2 f - (f/g)\nabla^2 g + f(\nabla g/g - \nabla f/f)(\nabla g/g - \nabla f/f)^T.
            339.
            \langle Relative entropy functional internal variables 334\rangle + \equiv
                 matrix \langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle auxgrad;
1926
                 matrix \langle T, symmetric, dense \rangle auxdense;
1927
1928
                matrix \langle T, symmetric, sparse \rangle auxsparse;
                      \langle Relative entropy functional class methods 335\rangle + \equiv
                 \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle & hess(\operatorname{const} \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
1929
                             &x, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& dest \rangle
1930
             #define auxhess auxdense
1931
                    ⟨relentr Hessian 341⟩;
1932
             \#undef auxhess
1933
                 }
1934
                 \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{sparse}\rangle & hess(\operatorname{const} \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
1935
                             \&x, \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse} \rangle \& dest)
1936
             #define auxhess auxsparse
1937
                    ⟨relentr Hessian 341⟩;
1938
             #undef auxhess
1939
                 }
1940
```

```
(\S 341)
                           RELATIVE ENTROPY
                 \langle \mathbf{relentr} \; \mathrm{Hessian} \; 341 \rangle \equiv
             \mathbf{T} \ fval \leftarrow f \neg eval(x);
1941
             \mathbf{T} \ gval \leftarrow g \neg eval(x);
1942
             if (qval < 0 \lor fval < 0) throw error::domain();
1943
             g \rightarrow grad(x, auxvec);
1944
             f \rightarrow qrad(x, auxqrad);
1945
             auxvec /= gval;
1946
             auxgrad /= fval;
1947
             outerp(auxvec -= auxgrad, \&dest);
1948
             dest *= fval:
1949
             g \rightarrow hess(x, auxhess);
1950
1951
             auxhess *= fval/gval;
             dest = auxhess;
1952
             f \rightarrow hess(x, auxhess);
1953
             auxhess *= (:: log(fval/qval) + 1);
1954
             return dest += auxhess;
1955
         This code is used in section 340.
                  The Error Function.
                                                The error function (erf) is defined as
                                                          \operatorname{erf}(x) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_0^x e^{-u^2} du
                  /* Empty, waiting for export */
         343.
                 \langle functional/erf.h 343 \rangle \equiv
           #ifndef __MATH_ERF_FUNCTIONAL__
1956
           #define __MATH_ERF_FUNCTIONAL__ 1.00
1957
           #include <math.h>
1958
           #include <math/functionalbase.h>
1959
             namespace math { namespace functional {
1960
                template \langle class T \rangle
1961
                class erf:public base\langle T \rangle {
1962
                   (Error function of a functional internal variables 344)
1963
                public:
1964
                   (Error function of a functional class methods 345)
1965
1966
             } }
1967
           #endif
1968
```

**345.**  $\langle$  Error function of a functional class methods 345 $\rangle \equiv$ 

 $typedef base\langle T \rangle *element_type;$ 

 $erf(element\_type new\_f):f(new\_f) \{ \}$ 

**344.**  $\langle$  Error function of a functional internal variables 344 $\rangle$   $\equiv$ 

See also sections 346, 348, and 350.

This code is used in section 343.

element\_type f;

This code is used in section 343.

See also section 349.

1969

1970

 $dest += hess\_aux;$ 

This code is used in section 350.

2002

2003

**return**  $dest *= 2 * :: exp(-result * result)/:: sqrt(M_PI);$ 

```
352.
                    The exponential of a functional.
                   /* Empty, waiting for export */
          353.
                    \langle functional/exp.h 353 \rangle \equiv
           #ifndef __MATH_EXP_FUNCTIONAL__
2004
           #define __MATH_EXP_FUNCTIONAL__ 1.00
2005
           #include <math.h>
2006
           #include <math/functionalbase.h>
2007
              namespace math {
2008
                 namespace functional
2009
2010
                    template \langle class T \rangle
2011
                    class exp:public base\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle {
2012
                        (Exponential of a functional internal variables 354)
2013
                    public:
2014
                       (Exponential of a functional class methods 355)
2015
2016
                    };
2017
              }
2018
           #endif
2019
                   \langle\, \text{Exponential of a functional internal variables 354}\,\rangle \equiv
          354.
2020
              typedef base\langle T \rangle *element_type;
2021
              element_type f;
          See also section 359.
          This code is used in section 353.
                    \langle Exponential of a functional class methods 355\rangle \equiv
              exp(element\_type new\_f):f(new\_f)  {
2022
          See also sections 356, 358, and 360.
          This code is used in section 353.
                    \langle Exponential of a functional class methods 355\rangle + \equiv
              T eval(const \ matrix \langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle \& x)
2023
2024
                 return :: \exp(f \rightarrow eval(x));
2025
2026
                    The gradient of the exponential is given by e^f \nabla f.
          357.
                    \langle Exponential of a functional class methods 355\rangle + \equiv
               \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \ \& \operatorname{grad}(\operatorname{const} \ \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
2027
                         &x, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& dest \rangle
2028
                 f \rightarrow qrad(x, dest);
2029
                 return dest *= eval(x);
2030
2031
```

20652066

#endif

```
The Hessian is given by e^f \nabla^2 f + e^f \nabla f \nabla^T f.
           \langle Exponential of a functional internal variables 354\rangle +\equiv
2032
               matrix \langle T, symmetric, dense \rangle Hdense;
               matrix\langle T, symmetric, sparse \rangle Hsparse;
2033
               matrix\langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle \ aux;
2034
           360.
                     \langle Exponential of a functional class methods 355\rangle + \equiv
2035
                \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \ \& \operatorname{hess}(\operatorname{const} \ \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
                           &x, matrix\langle T, symmetric, dense \rangle \& dest)
2036
                  f \rightarrow grad(x, aux);
2037
2038
                   outerp(aux, \&Hdense);
                  f \rightarrow hess(x, dest);
2039
                  dest += Hdense;
2040
                  return dest *= eval(x);
2041
2042
               }
                \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{sparse}\rangle & hess(\operatorname{const} \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
2043
                           &x, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse} \rangle \& dest \rangle
2044
                   f \rightarrow grad(x, aux);
2045
                   outerp(aux, \&Hsparse);
2046
                   f \rightarrow hess(x, dest);
2047
                   dest += Hsparse;
2048
                  return dest *= eval(x);
2049
               }
2050
           361.
                     The logarithm of a functional.
                     /* Empty, waiting for export */
           362.
                     \langle functional/log.h 362 \rangle \equiv
2051
            #ifndef __MATH_LOG_FUNCTIONAL__
            #define __MATH_LOG_FUNCTIONAL__ 1.00
2052
            #include <math.h>
2053
2054
            #include <math/functionalbase.h>
               namespace math {
2055
2056
                  namespace functional
2057
                     template \langle class T \rangle
2058
                     class log:public base\langle T \rangle {
2059
2060
                         (Logarithm of a functional internal variables 363)
                     public:
2061
2062
                         (Logarithm of a functional class methods 364)
                     };
2063
                  }
2064
```

```
363. The functionals to be added are stored in a vector of pairs of weights and functionals.
           \langle Logarithm of a functional internal variables 363\rangle \equiv
                typedef base\langle T \rangle *element_type;
2067
                element_type f;
2068
           See also section 368.
           This code is used in section 362.
           364.
           \langle Logarithm of a functional class methods 364\rangle \equiv
                log(element\_type new\_f): f(new\_f) \{ \}
2069
           See also sections 365, 367, and 369.
           This code is used in section 362.
           365.
           \langle Logarithm of a functional class methods 364\rangle +\equiv
                T eval(\mathbf{const\ matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& x)
2070
2071
                   \mathbf{T} \ result \leftarrow :: \log(f \neg eval(x));
2072
                  if (¬finite(result)) throw error::domain();
2073
                  return result;
2074
2075
                }
           366.
                      The gradient of the logarithm is given by \nabla f/f.
                      \langle Logarithm of a functional class methods 364 \rangle + \equiv
                \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \& \operatorname{grad}(\operatorname{const} \ \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
2076
                           &x, matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& dest \rangle
2077
                   \mathbf{T} \ result \leftarrow f \neg eval(x);
2078
                   f \rightarrow grad(x, dest);
2079
                   return dest /= result;
2080
2081
                     The Hessian is given by \nabla^2 f/f - \nabla f \nabla^T f/f^2.
           \langle Logarithm of a functional internal variables 363\rangle + \equiv
                matrix\langle T, symmetric, dense \rangle Hdense;
2082
                matrix \langle T, symmetric, sparse \rangle Hsparse;
2083
                matrix\langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle aux;
2084
```

```
\langle Logarithm of a functional class methods 364\rangle +\equiv
                   \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle & hess(\operatorname{const} \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
2085
                                &x, matrix\langle T, symmetric, dense \rangle \& dest)
                   {
2086
                      \mathbf{T} \ result \leftarrow f \neg eval(x);
2087
                      f \rightarrow grad(x, aux);
2088
                      outerp(aux, \&Hdense);
2089
2090
                      Hdense /= (-result);
                      f \rightarrow hess(x, dest);
2091
                      dest += Hdense;
2092
                      return dest /= result;
2093
2094
                   }
                   \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{sparse}\rangle & hess(\operatorname{const} \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle
2095
                                \&x, \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse} \rangle \& dest)
2096
                      T result \leftarrow f \neg eval(x);
2097
                      f \rightarrow grad(x, aux);
2098
                      outerp(aux, \&Hsparse);
2099
                      Hdense /= (-result);
2100
                      f \rightarrow hess(x, dest);
2101
                      dest += Hsparse;
2102
                      return dest /= result;
2103
2104
                   }
```

**370.** Line Searching. We begin now the definitions that will enable us to perform various types of numerical optimization. The first task we face is the one of minimizing a functional along a line. There are many algorithms to perform this task, and which to use will depend heavily on the specific problem (for example, is it cheap to compute the gradient, to evaluate the function at a point and so on).

```
/* Empty, waiting for export. */
                \langle linesearchbase.h 371 \rangle \equiv
        371.
         #ifndef __MATH_LINESEARCH__
2105
         #define __MATH_LINESEARCH__
2106
         #include <math/functionalbase.h>
2107
           namespace math {
2108
2109
              namespace linesearch
2110
                template \langle class T \rangle
2111
                class base {
2112
                public:
2113
                  virtual \sim base(void) \{ \}
2114
                   (Line search base class methods 372)
2115
2116
                };
2117
2118
         #endif
2119
```

**372.** The interface is very simple: there is one method that applies the minimization algorithm to a given functional, starting from a given point and searching in a given direction. The syntax is minimize (functional,  $x\theta$ , dir). The direction does not always need to have unity norm, but you better check out the specific algorithm to be sure that this is the case. The minimize method returns the minimizing point. As a design decision, it would be beneficial in some cases (for example in the backtracking algorithm) to include the gradient in the list of arguments, since the gradient would probably be available from the computation of the search direction. Since we cannot require this (for example, in some cases the gradient would have to be computed via some expensive simulation), we provide an alternative method that takes the gradient at the starting point as the third argument (the search direction becomes the fourth).

 $\langle$  Line search base class methods 372 $\rangle \equiv$ 

```
virtual matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle minimize (functional:: base \langle \mathbf{T} \rangle *, const matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle &, const matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle &) \leftarrow 0; virtual matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle minimize (functional:: base \langle \mathbf{T} \rangle *, const matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle &, const matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle &, const matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle &) \leftarrow 0;
```

This code is used in section 371.

2120

2121

373. The bisection algorithm. Although not really a true bisection algorithm, it works by halving the step size when appropriate as we will see. This is only an example of line searching, but this algorithm can fail miserably in practice: depending on the function and on the disposition of local minima, you can end up in a local minima that is bigger than the closest one. You're advised do use other methods if possible. That said, we move on: As with many algorithms, we must provide a stopping criterion. In this case, the algorithm stops whenever  $||x-x^*|| \leq tol$ , where tol is a given tolerance. Also, some people claim that halving the step size is not always the best thing to do. We then provide a means to alter this behavior via a **ratio** parameter, so that when the step size is changed, it changes via  $step \leftarrow step *ratio$ . Of course, we need 0 < ratio < 1 for the algorithm to work.

```
/* Empty, waiting for export. */
```

```
#ifndef __MATH_BISECTION__
2122
           #define __MATH_BISECTION__
2123
           #include <math.h>
2124
              const double bisection\_infty \leftarrow \texttt{HUGE\_VAL};
2125
                /* Some compilers have problems inlining this constant. */
           #include <math/algebra.h>
2126
           #include <math/linesearchbase.h>
2127
              namespace math {
2128
                namespace linesearch
2129
2130
                   template \langle class T \rangle
2131
                   class bisection:public base\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle {
2132
                      double tol.
2133
                            ratio;
2134
                            unsigned long maxiter;
                                                                 /* Stop in case its unbounded below or something. */
2135
                   public: ~bisection(void)
2136
2137
                      { }
                      (Bisection line search methods 375)
2138
2139
                    ⟨bisection big definitions 378⟩;
2140
2141
2142
           #endif
2143
          375. First we provide a constructor that enable us to set all parameters at creation time, with some
          defaults in case we don't care about it.
          \langle Bisection line search methods 375\rangle \equiv
              bisection(double t \leftarrow 1 \cdot 10^{-3}, double r \leftarrow 0.5, unsigned long i \leftarrow 1000)
2144
              : tol(t), ratio(r), maxiter(i) { }
2145
          See also sections 376 and 377.
          This code is used in section 374.
          376. The first thing we do is to define the method that takes the gradient as an argument. We don't use
          the gradient for this algorithm, so the only thing we do is to call the other method.
          \langle Bisection line search methods 375\rangle + \equiv
              \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \ minimize(\operatorname{functional} :: \operatorname{base}\langle \mathbf{T}\rangle *f,
2146
                        const matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& x\theta, \mathbf{const} \ \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle
                        \&g\theta, const matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \&dir \rangle
2147
                return minimize(f, x\theta, dir);
2148
2149
```

This code is used in section 374.

THE BISECTION ALGORITHM

The algorithm works as follows: we make  $x \leftarrow x\theta$ . At each step, we start from x and go in the descending direction until we pass the minimum, as indicated by an increase in the function. At this point, we know the descent direction will be to the other side, so we turn around and proceed slower, that is, with a smaller stepsize. The stopping criterion is independent of  $x^*$  and x since

$$||x - x^*|| \le ||x - (x + \delta x)|| = ||\delta x||,$$

where  $\|\delta x\|$  is a positive multiple of  $\|dir\|$ . We consider that reaching the maximum number of iterations is an error. Note that the maximum number of iterations is with respect to the *inner* loop, since the outer

```
loop always finishes. The algorithm follows:
            \langle Bisection line search methods 375\rangle + \equiv
2150
                 \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \ \operatorname{\textit{minimize}}(\operatorname{functional} :: \operatorname{base}\langle \mathbf{T}\rangle * \operatorname{\textit{func}}, \operatorname{const} \ \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T},
                      unstructured, dense \rangle \& x\theta, const matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& dir \rangle;
                      \langle bisection big definitions 378\rangle \equiv
                template \langle class T \rangle matrix \langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle bisection \langle T \rangle :: minimize (functional :: base \langle T \rangle
2151
                             *func, const matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& x\theta, const matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle
                             & dir){ double stepsize \leftarrow 1, dirnorm \leftarrow norm2(dir);
                       \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ x(x\theta);
2152
                        unsigned long outer_iter \leftarrow 0; while ( fabs ( stepsize / ratio )
2153
                             *dirnorm > tol \land ++outer\_iter < maxiter) { double f \leftarrow func \neg eval(x);
2154
                       double newf;
                        (Compute next function value for bisection 379);
2155
                       unsigned long inner\_iter \leftarrow 0;
2156
                       while (newf < f) {
2157
                          f \leftarrow newf;
2158
                           (Compute next function value for bisection 379);
2159
                          if (++inner_iter > maxiter) throw error::unboundedbelow();
2160
2161
                       stepsize *= -ratio; \} return x; \}
2162
```

2199

2200

#endif

```
\langle Compute next function value for bisection 379\rangle \equiv
            saxpy(stepsize, dir, \&x);
2163
2164
            try {
               newf \leftarrow func \neg eval(x);
2165
2166
            catch(error::domain e)
2167
2168
               newf \leftarrow bisection\_infty;
2169
2170
            while (\neg finite(newf)) { saxpy(-stepsize, dir, \&x); stepsize *= ratio;
2171
            saxpy(stepsize, dir, \&x);
2172
            try {
2173
2174
               newf \leftarrow func \neg eval(x);
2175
2176
            catch(error::domain e)
2177
               newf \leftarrow bisection\_infty;
2178
2179
2180
            if (stepsize \equiv 0) return x;
2181
         This code is used in section 378.
                                     This line search algorithm uses the gradient information. We begin with a unit
         380. Backtracking.
         step \lambda, and until we have
                                              f(x_0 + \lambda \cdot dir) \leq f(x_0) + \lambda \alpha \nabla f(x_0)^T dir
         we update the step with \beta\lambda. The algorithm parameters are \alpha and \beta, where 0 < \alpha < 0.5 and 0 < \beta < 1.
                 /* Empty, waiting for export. */
                 \langle linesearch/backtracking.h 381 \rangle \equiv
          #ifndef __MATH_BACKTRACKING_LINESEARCH__
2182
          #define __MATH_BACKTRACKING_LINESEARCH__ 1.0
2183
            const double backtracking\_infty \leftarrow \texttt{HUGE\_VAL};
2184
              /* Some compilers have problems using HUGE_VAL. */
          #include <math/algebra.h>
2185
          #include <math/linesearchbase.h>
2186
            namespace math {
2187
               namespace linesearch
2188
2189
                 template \langle class T \rangle
2190
                 class backtracking:public base\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle {
2191
                    double alpha, beta;
2192
                    unsigned long maxiter;
2193
2194
                 public: ~backtracking(void)
                    {}
2195
                    (Backtracking line search methods 382)
2196
2197
                 };
2198
```

**382.** First we provide a constructor that enable us to set all parameters at creation time, with some defaults in case we don't care about it.

```
\langle Backtracking line search methods 382\rangle \equiv
                backtracking (double a \leftarrow 0.3, double b \leftarrow 0.8, unsigned long m \leftarrow 1000)
2201
                : alpha(a), beta(b), maxiter(m) { }
2202
            See also sections 383 and 384.
            This code is used in section 381.
                      The first thing we do is to define the method that doesn't take the gradient as an argument. Since
            we need the gradient, what this method does is to compute it and call the correct method.
            \langle Backtracking line search methods 382\rangle + \equiv
2203
                \operatorname{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense} \rangle \ \operatorname{minimize}(\operatorname{functional} :: \operatorname{base} \langle \mathbf{T} \rangle * f, \operatorname{const} \ \operatorname{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{thermal} \rangle
                             unstructured, dense \& x\theta, const matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& dir \rangle
                {
2204
                    \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ g\theta;
2205
                    g\theta \leftarrow f \neg grad(x\theta, g\theta);
2206
2207
                    return minimize(f, x\theta, g\theta, dir);
                }
2208
            384.
            \langle Backtracking line search methods 382\rangle + \equiv
                \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \ minimize(\operatorname{functional} :: \operatorname{base}\langle \mathbf{T}\rangle * func,
2209
                             const matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& x\theta, \mathbf{const} \ \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle
                             \&g\theta, const matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \&dir \rangle
                 {
2210
                    \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense} \rangle x;
2211
                    double ftreshold \leftarrow func \neg eval(x\theta);
2212
                    double qtreshold \leftarrow alpha * dot(q\theta, dir);
2213
2214
                    double stepsize \leftarrow 1/beta;
                    unsigned long iter \leftarrow 0;
2215
                    double fval;
2216
             #ifdef __MATH_DEBUG__
2217
                    cout \ll "[math]: \_backtracking \_line \_search \_begin. \n";
2218
                    cout \ll "[math] : _{\sqcup}x0_{\sqcup} = _{\sqcup}";
2219
                    for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq x\theta.rows(); ++i) cout \ll x\theta(i) \ll ' \sqcup ';
2220
                    cout \ll '\n':
2221
                    cout \ll "[math]: dir_{\sqcup}=_{\sqcup}";
2222
                    for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq dir.rows(); ++i) cout \ll dir(i) \ll ' \sqcup ';
2223
                    cout \ll '\n';
2224
2225
             #endif
                    do {
2226
                        (Compute next function value for backtracking 385);
2227
2228
                       if (++iter \equiv maxiter) throw error::maxiterations();
                    \} while (fval > ftreshold + stepsize * gtreshold);
2229
             #ifdef __MATH_DEBUG__
2230
                    cout \ll "[math]: \_backtracking\_line\_search\_end.\n";
2231
             #endif
2232
                    return x;
2233
2234
```

```
385. (Compute next function value for backtracking 385) \equiv
             fval \leftarrow backtracking\_infty;
2235
             while (\neg finite(fval)) {
2236
               x \leftarrow dir;
2237
               x *= (stepsize *= beta);
2238
2239
               x += x\theta;
          #ifdef __MATH_DEBUG__
2240
                cout \ll "[math]: |x_{\sqcup} = |";
2241
               for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \le x.rows(); ++i) cout \ll x(i) \ll ' \sqcup ';
2242
                cout \ll '\n';
2243
          \#endif
2244
2245
               try {
                  fval \leftarrow func \neg eval(x);
2246
2247
               catch(error::domain e)
2248
2249
                  fval \leftarrow backtracking\_infty;
2250
2251
          \#ifdef __MATH_DEBUG__
2252
                cout \ll "[math]:_{\sqcup}f(x)=" \ll fval \ll ",_{\sqcup}stepsize=" \ll stepsize \ll ",_{\sqcup}treshold=" \ll
2253
                    ftreshold + stepsize * gtreshold \ll '\n';
          \#endif
2254
               if (stepsize \equiv 0.0) fval \leftarrow ftreshold + stepsize * gtreshold;
2255
2256
         This code is used in section 384.
```

**386.** Computing a search direction. Once you have a line minimization algorithm the only thing that you still need in order to define a local minimization algorithm is a method for computing the search direction.

```
/* Empty, waiting for export. */
                \langle searchdirbase.h 387 \rangle \equiv
         #ifndef __MATH_SEARCHDIRBASE__
2257
2258
         #define __MATH_SEARCHDIRBASE__ 1.0
         #include <math/math.h>
2259
         #include <math/functionalbase.h>
2260
           namespace math {
2261
2262
             namespace searchdir
2263
                template \langle class T \rangle
2264
                class base {
2265
                public:
2266
                  virtual \sim base(void) \{ \}
2267
                  (Search direction base class methods 388)
2268
2269
                };
2270
2271
         #endif
2272
```

**388.** Now to the interface: The only thing a search direction method has to do is to compute a descent direction based on a functional and a starting point. Our method will return the descent direction.

 $\langle$  Search direction base class methods 388 $\rangle \equiv$ 

```
virtual matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& dir(\mathbf{functional} :: \mathbf{base} \langle \mathbf{T} \rangle *f, \mathbf{const}  matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& xi, \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle *dest) \leftarrow 0;
```

This code is used in section 387.

2273

**389.** The gradient direction. If you're able to compute the gradient easily (that is, not requiring simulation or something) and the Hessian is too costy for you, then the gradient search direction can be a good choice.

```
/* Empty, waiting for export. */
```

```
\langle \text{searchdir/gradient.h} \quad 390 \rangle \equiv
             #ifndef __MATH_SEARCHDIR_GRADIENT__
2274
             #define __MATH_SEARCHDIR_GRADIENT__
2275
             #include <math/searchdirbase.h>
2276
                namespace math {
2277
2278
                    namespace searchdir
2279
                       template \langle class T \rangle
2280
                       class gradient:public base\langle T \rangle {
2281
2282
                       public:
                           \simgradient(void)
2283
2284
                           (Gradient search direction methods 391)
2285
2286
                       };
2287
2288
             \#endif
2289
                      The search direction is basically -\nabla f.
            \langle Gradient search direction methods 391\rangle \equiv
                 \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \& \operatorname{dir}(\operatorname{functional} :: \operatorname{base}\langle \mathbf{T}\rangle * f, \operatorname{const} \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured},
2290
                             \operatorname{dense} \ \&x, \operatorname{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense} \rangle * dest \rangle
2291
                    f \rightarrow grad(x, *dest);
2292
                    return (*dest) *= -1;
2293
2294
```

**392.** The Newton direction. If you are lucky enough that the Hessian computation is not a big deal and you can afford solving a linear system each time the search direction is needed, then the Newton direction is a no-brainer. The only thing that needs to be defined is what type of storage you want to use for the Hessian. For large, sparse problems, you probably want a sparse storage.

```
/* Empty, waiting for export. */
```

This code is used in section 390.

This code is used in section 393.

**396.** Enforcing equality constraints. All the search direction classes defined above are not able to take into account the search direction must, in some cases, have zero component in some directions. The most obvious and common case is when we want to minimize something while enforcing an equality constraint Ax = b. We will define a class that, based on a search direction d computed in any way, transforms it so that A(x + tv) = b for any real t.

```
/* Empty, waiting for export. */
                  \langle \text{searchdir/equality.h} \quad 397 \rangle \equiv
           #ifndef __MATH_SEARCHDIR_EQUALITY__
2332
           #define __MATH_SEARCHDIR_EQUALITY__ 1.0
2333
           #include <math/searchdirbase.h>
2334
2335
           #include <math/symmetric.h>
           #include <math/lu.h>
2336
             namespace math {
2337
                namespace searchdir
2338
2339
                   template \langle matrix\_simple\_template \rangle
2340
                   class equality:public base\langle T \rangle {
2341
                      (Equality search direction internal variables 398)
2342
                  public:
2343
                      (Equality search direction methods 399)
2344
2345
                   };
2346
2347
2348
           #endif
                  First we need a way to let the user define which basic search direction he wants to use.
          \langle Equality search direction internal variables 398\rangle \equiv
2349
             \mathbf{base}\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle * dirf;
          See also section 400.
          This code is used in section 397.
                   \langle Equality search direction methods 399\rangle \equiv
             equality(void): dirf(0) \{ \}
2350
             equality(base\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle *newf):dirf(newf) {}
2351
             \mathbf{base}\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle * \& f(\mathbf{void}) \ \{ \ \mathbf{return} \ dirf; \ \}
2352
          See also sections 401 and 403.
          This code is used in section 397.
```

**400.** Now to the A matrix. Suppose that our basic direction class provides us with a preferred direction  $d_0$ . What we do is to compute the projection of  $d_0$  into the kernel of A. This task can be acomplished by solving the linear system

$$\begin{bmatrix} I & A^T \\ A & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} d \\ w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} d_0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix},$$

which in the end will give

$$d = (I - A^T (AA^T)^{-1} A) d_0$$

. That's the only time where we use the A matrix, so we can see that we don't need to store it: what we store is the LU decomposition (the matrix is not necessarily positive-definite) of the linear system matrix, so that no matter how many directions we compute, solving the linear system is a very fast operation (no decompositions needed!). The only catch here is that we may receive (and we will when barrier functions are defined) a preferred direction with the wrong dimension. We store the correct dimension in *xrows* and deal with it later on.

```
⟨ Equality search direction internal variables 398 ⟩ +≡
             matrix \langle T, unstructured, storage \rangle decomp;
2353
             \mathbf{vector}\langle \mathbf{index} \rangle \ pivots;
2354
             index xrows;
2355
                 \langle Equality search direction methods 399\rangle + \equiv
             equality (const matrix \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{structure}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle \& A): dirf(0) \{ set\_A(newa); \}
2356
             void set_A(const \ matrix \langle T, structure, storage \rangle \& A)
2357
2358
           #ifdef __MATH_DEBUG__
2359
                cout \ll "[math]: \_equality\_search\_constructor.\n";
2360
                for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq A.rows(); ++i) {
2361
                  for (index j \leftarrow 1; j < A.cols(); ++j) cout \ll A(i,j) \ll '++j';
2362
                   cout \ll '\n';
2363
2364
           #endif
2365
                xrows \leftarrow A.cols();
2366
                decomp.resize(A.cols() + A.rows(), A.cols() + A.rows());
2367
                decomp.fillwith(0.0);
2368
                decomp.subm(1, A.cols(), 1 + A.cols(), decomp.cols()) \leftarrow transpose(A);
2369
                decomp.subm(1 + A.cols(), decomp.rows(), 1, A.cols()) \leftarrow A;
2370
                for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq A.cols(); ++i) decomp.entry(i,i) \leftarrow 1;
2371
                lu::decompose(&decomp, &pivots);
2372
             }
2373
```

**402.** Now we're ready to compute the direction. As said before, we may receive a preferred direction with the wrong dimensions. This happens when barrier functions are in use and a new slack variable is introduced in the problem after the A matrix is defined. Therefore, when x has the wrong dimension, we know it has exactly one more component than the original number, and what we do is to project only the first components.

```
\langle Equality search direction methods 399\rangle + \equiv
              \operatorname{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense} \rangle \& \operatorname{dir}(\operatorname{functional} :: \operatorname{base} \langle \mathbf{T} \rangle * f, \operatorname{const} \operatorname{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense} \rangle
2374
                         \operatorname{dense} \ \&x, \operatorname{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense} \rangle * dest )
               {
2375
                 double extra\_component \leftarrow 0;
2376
                  dest \neg resize(decomp.rows(), 1);
2377
                  dest \rightarrow fill with (0.0);
2378
                  dirf \neg dir(f, x, dest);
2379
            #ifdef __MATH_DEBUG__
2380
                  cout \ll "[math]: \_equality \_search \_dir \_begin. \n [math]: \_orig \_dir \_= \_";
2381
                 for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq x.rows(); ++i) cout \ll (*dest)(i) \ll ' \sqcup ';
2382
2383
                  cout \ll '\n';
            #endif
2384
                 if (x.rows() \neq xrows) extra_component \leftarrow (*dest)(xrows + 1);
2385
                  dest \rightarrow entry(xrows + 1) \leftarrow 0.0;
2386
                 lu:: finish(decomp, pivots, dest);
2387
2388
                  dest \rightarrow resize(x.rows(), 1);
2389
                 if (x.rows() \neq xrows) dest-entry(xrows + 1) \leftarrow extra\_component;
            #ifdef __MATH_DEBUG__
2390
                  cout \ll "[math]: \_new\_dir_{\square} =_{\square}";
2391
                 for (index i \leftarrow 1; i < result.rows(); ++i) cout \ll (*dest)(i) \ll '+i';
2392
                  cout \ll "\n[math]: | equality| search | dir| end. \n";
2393
2394
            #endif
                 return *dest;
2395
2396
                    Newton direction with equality constraints.
                    /* Empty, waiting for export */
                   \langle searchdir/equality/newton.h \langle 405\rangle
            #ifndef __MATH_SEARCHDIR_EQUALITY_NEWTON__
2397
            #define __MATH_SEARCHDIR_EQUALITY_NEWTON__
2398
            #include <math/math.h>
2399
            #include <math/searchdirbase.h>
2400
2401
            #include <math/lu.h>
              namespace math { namespace searchdir { namespace equalty { template \( \) class T, template
2402
                      \langle  class > class storage > class newton : public base\langle T \rangle \{
                  (Newton with equality internal variables 406);
2403
              public: (Newton with equality functions 408);
2404
2405
               }; } } }
            #endif
2406
          406. Let us be wise memorywise. Unlike with the pure equality search direction, we will have to restore
          the system matrix every time we compute a new direction. So that's what we do: we store the A matrix
          literallyi. This matrix will not change once its initialized. Next, we keep the system matrix in a matrix M.
           \langle Newton with equality internal variables 406\rangle \equiv
2407
               \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{storage} \rangle A;
              \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{storage}\rangle H;
2408
              \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{storage} \rangle M;
2409
          See also section 407.
          This code is used in section 405.
```

106 (§407) NEWTON DIRECTION WITH EQUALITY CONSTRAINTSMATH LIBRARY (Version alpha 3-22-2002)
407. Of course, we also face the same auxiliary variable problem.
⟨Newton with equality internal variables 406⟩ +≡
bool has\_t;
index xrows; /\* Original number of variables. \*/

```
\langle Newton with equality functions 408\rangle \equiv
               \operatorname{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense} \rangle \& \operatorname{dir}(\operatorname{functional} :: \operatorname{base} \langle \mathbf{T} \rangle * f, \operatorname{const} \operatorname{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense} \rangle 
2412
                           \operatorname{dense} \ \&x, \operatorname{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense} \rangle * dest )
               {
2413
                  if (x.rows() \neq xrows \land has_t \equiv false) {
2414
                     has_{-}t \leftarrow true;
2415
                     A.resize(A.rows(), xrows + 1);
2416
                     for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq A.rows(); ++i) A.entry(i, xrows + 1) \leftarrow 0;
2417
2418
                  if (x.rows() \equiv xrows \land has\_t \equiv true) {
2419
                     has_t \leftarrow false;
2420
                     A.resize(A.rows(), xrows);
2421
2422
2423
                  try {
                     f \rightarrow grad(x, *dest);
2424
                      f \rightarrow hess(x, H);
2425
            #ifdef __MATH_DEBUG__
2426
                     cout \ll "[math]:_{l}got_{l}Hessian.\n";
2427
                      cout \ll "H=\n";
2428
                     for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq H.rows(); ++i) {
2429
                         cout \ll "row_{\sqcup}" \ll i \ll ":_{\sqcup}";
2430
2431
                        for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq H.cols(); ++j) cout \ll H(i,j) \ll ' \sqcup ';
2432
                         cout \ll '\n';
2433
            #endif
2434
                      dest \neg resize(x.rows() + A.rows(), 1);
2435
                     M.resize(x.rows() + A.rows(), x.rows() + A.rows());
2436
                     for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq A.rows(); ++i) {
2437
                         dest \neg entry(i + x.rows(), 1) \leftarrow 0;
2438
                        for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq A.rows(); ++j) M.entry(i + x.rows(), j + x.rows()) \leftarrow 0;
2439
                        for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq A.cols(); ++j) {
2440
                            M.entry(i + x.rows(), j) \leftarrow A(i, j);
2441
2442
                            M.entry(j, i + x.rows()) \leftarrow A(i, j);
                        }
2443
2444
                     for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq x.rows(); ++i)
2445
                        for (index j \leftarrow i; j \le x.rows(); ++j) {
2446
2447
                            M.entry(i,j) \leftarrow H(i,j);
                            M.entry(j,i) \leftarrow H(j,i);
2448
2449
            #ifdef __MATH_DEBUG__
2450
                      cout \ll "[math]: \_about\_to\_get\_search\_direction. \n";
2451
2452
                      cout \ll "M=\n";
                     for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq M.rows(); ++i) {
2453
                        for (index j \leftarrow 1; j \leq M.cols(); ++j) cout \ll M(i,j) \ll ' \sqcup ';
2454
                         cout \ll '\n';
2455
2456
2457
                     cout \ll "dest=\n";
2458
                     for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq dest \neg rows(); ++i) cout \ll dest \neg get(i,1) \ll ' \sqcup ';
                      cout \ll '\n';
2459
            #endif
2460
```

lu :: solve(M, \*dest);

2461

```
NEWTON DIRECTION WITH EQUALITY CONSTRAINTSMATH LIBRARY (Version alpha 3-22-2002)
                  dest \neg resize(x.rows(), 1);
2462
           #ifdef __MATH_DEBUG__
2463
2464
                   cout \ll "dest=\n";
                  for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq dest \neg rows(); ++i) cout \ll dest \neg get(i,1) \ll ' \sqcup ';
2465
                   cout \ll '\n';
2466
2467
           #endif
2468
2469
                catch(error::singular e)
2470
                   f \neg grad(x, *dest);
2471
2472
                return (*dest) *= -1;
2473
             }
2474
         See also section 409.
         This code is used in section 405.
         409. Now we provide a function to set the A matrix.
          \langle Newton with equality functions 408\rangle +\equiv
             void set_A(\mathbf{const\ matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{storage}\rangle \& a)
2475
2476
                has_{-}t \leftarrow false;
2477
                xrows \leftarrow a.cols();
2478
2479
                A \leftarrow a;
2480
```

108

 $(\S408)$ 

**Optimization algorithms.** We have a generic matrix class, we are able to perform some useful decompositions, we have a functional class, a line search class and a descent direction class. We are in position to build up a generic optimization package. The ultimate goal would be to efficiently solve the problem

minimize 
$$f_0(x)$$
  
subject to  $f_i(x) \prec 0$ ,  $i = 1, ..., p$   
 $g_i(x) = 0$ ,  $i = 1, ..., q$ 

for any type of convex constraints. The best way to accomplish this goal is by using barrier-function based optimization algorithms. These are functions that are infinite outside the feasible set of the constraint and finite inside, that is,  $\phi_i(x) = \infty$  if and only if  $f_i(x) \succeq 0$ . With this property, we see that the minimum value of  $f_0(x) + \Sigma \phi_i(x)$  is bounded above if and only if the optimization problem is feasible. In what follows we build the base that will enable us to come up with a generic sequential unconstrained optimization routine. The basic idea is as follows, we compute the minimum of  $tf_0(x) + \Sigma \phi_i(x)$  for increasing values of t. As this value goes to infinity we will approach the optimal solution of the original problem. The equality constraints will be satisfied if we use a search direction class that ensures this property – so we are able to ensure Ax = b, for example.

411. Functional minimization. The first thing we need is to be able to minimize a functional without any constraints. Strictly speaking the correct thing to do would be to define a base class for functional minimization and specialize it depending on the stop criteria, but in the real world we face only two of them:

$$|x_i - x_i^*| \le |x_i^*| reltol + abstol$$
  
 $\|\nabla f(x)\| \le abstol.$ 

Of course, the first condition only makes sense when  $abstol \cdot reltol = 0$ . From that observation we decided to define only one functional minimization function that can take into account all of the above stopping criteria.

The function we'll define will take various arguments: the first are the functional to be minimized, the starting point, the line search algorithm and the search direction algorithm. The starting point will be overwritten with the optimal point approximation and returned on exit. The next arguments define the stopping criteria: abstol and reltol have the meaning of that first stopping condition described above. They can be both positive, in which case the optimization stops when both the absolute error and the relative error conditions are met. If you don't want one of them to have an effect, simply assign it zero. The gtol argument specifies, if nonzero, the stop condition for the gradient norm. At last, the user can input the maximum allowed number of iterations and a pointer to a function that gets the current piont at each iteration (possibly for displaying interactively).

/\* Empty, waiting for **export**. \*/

```
412.
                     \langle fmin.h 412 \rangle \equiv
            #ifndef __MATH_FMIN__
2481
            \#define __MATH_FMIN__ 1.0
2482
            #include <math/functionalbase.h>
2483
            #include <math/linesearchbase.h>
2484
            #include <math/searchdirbase.h>
2485
               namespace math {
2486
                   template \langle class T \rangle
2487
                   matrix \langle T,
2488
                              unstructured, dense \rangle \& fmin(functional::base \langle T \rangle *f, matrix \langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle
                              &x, linesearch:: base\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle * lsearch, searchdir:: base\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle * sdir, \mathbf{T} abstol \leftarrow 1 \cdot 10^{-4}, \mathbf{T}
                              reltol \leftarrow 1 \cdot 10^{-3}, \mathbf{T} \ gtol \leftarrow 1 \cdot 10^{-3}, \mathbf{unsigned long} \ maxiter \leftarrow 1000, \mathbf{void}(*disp)(\mathbf{const})
                              \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ \& \ ) \leftarrow 0)
2489
                      (Functional minimization algorithm 413)
2490
2491
2492
            #endif
2493
```

**413.** The algorithm is pretty simple: we keep calling the line minimization function until the stop criteria is met or the maximum number of iterations is reached (in which case we return the last line minimizer). The only trick in this function is that we only use the gradient for line minimization if gtol > 0. In this case, our function keeps the last function gradient in grad (which is otherwise not used).

```
\langle Functional minimization algorithm 413\rangle \equiv
2494
                  \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ x\theta, \ grad, \ dir;
2495
                  if (gtol) f \rightarrow grad(x, grad);
2496
                  bool stop \leftarrow false;
2497
                  for (unsigned long iter \leftarrow 0; \neg stop \land iter \neq maxiter; ++iter) {
2498
2499
                     if (gtol) x \leftarrow lsearch \neg minimize(f, x, grad, sdir \neg dir(f, x, \& dir));
2500
2501
                     else x \leftarrow lsearch \neg minimize(f, x, sdir \neg dir(f, x, \& dir));
                     (Update functional minimization stop criteria 414)
2502
                     if (disp) disp(x);
2503
2504
2505
                  return x;
2506
           This code is used in section 412.
```

**414.** We test if all stopping criteria are satisfied. For the relative tolerance we have to check if it makes sense: if  $x_i = 0$  no relative tolerance can be reached (in practice).

This code is used in section 413.

**415. Barrier functions.** The next step necessary in order to achieve our goal is to define barrier functions. Barrier functions, as aligned before, are functionals that are bounded above if and only if the constraint to which they relate is feasible. In our convention, a constraint is feasible when its defining function is negative.

```
/* Empty, waiting for export */
        416.
                \langle \text{barrierbase.h} 416 \rangle \equiv
2512
         #ifndef __MATH_BARRIER__
         #define __MATH_BARRIER__ 1.0
2513
         #include <math/functionalbase.h>
2514
         #include <math/functionbase.h>
2515
2516
            namespace math {
              namespace barrier
2517
2518
                template\langle class\ T\rangle\ classbase:public\ functional::base\langle T\rangle
2519
2520
                   (Barrier function internal variables 417)
2521
2522
                public:
                   (Barrier function methods 418)
2523
2524
2525
2526
2527
         #endif
2528
```

**417.** In order to make things easier for the programmer, we allow a barrier function to be related to a *vector-valued function*. We will store pointers to the function or functional, and the convention is that only one of them can be nonzero at any time.

```
\langle Barrier function internal variables 417\rangle \equiv protected: functional::base\langleT\rangle*fctnal; function::base\langleT\rangle*fct;
```

See also section 420.

2529 2530

This code is used in section 416.

```
\langle Barrier function methods 418\rangle \equiv
               base(functional::base(T) * newf \leftarrow 0)
2531
               : fctnal(newf), fct(0), has_t(false) { }
2532
               base(function :: base(T) * newf)
2533
               : fctnal(0), fct(newf), has_t(false) { }
2534
               void f(\mathbf{functional} :: \mathbf{base} \langle \mathbf{T} \rangle * newf)
2535
2536
2537
                  fctnal \leftarrow newf:
                  fct \leftarrow 0;
2538
2539
2540
               void f(\mathbf{function} :: \mathbf{base} \langle \mathbf{T} \rangle * newf)
2541
                  fctnal \leftarrow 0;
2542
                  fct \leftarrow newf;
2543
2544
               virtual \sim base(void) \{ \}
2545
           See also sections 421, 422, 423, and 424.
           This code is used in section 416.
```

- 419. We don't need to define the gradient and Hessian methods because we're already derived from a class that derive them. The only thing we have to define is the behavior when dealing with vector-valued functions: in this case, the gradient is the sum of the gradient of the vector elements, and similarly for the Hessian and the evaluation functions. There's another important thing that must be taken into account by evaluation methods.
- **420.** We use barrier function in constrained optimization problems. Some algorithms don't require an initial feasible point, that is, we don't need an x such that f(x) < 0. One standard way to find a feasible point is to add a variable to the constraint so that f(x) < t is feasible, and then minimize t. These methods will then call the addt function of the barrier functions to signal that we should behave as if this variable existed. From then on, until a call for delt, the last component of the argument for eval and so on is considered to be t, and the evaluation methods must deal with it accordingly.

 $\langle$  Barrier function internal variables 417 $\rangle$  + $\equiv$  **bool**  $has_-t$ ;

2546

**421.** The addt function returns a value of t that satisfies  $f(x) \leq t$ .

```
\langle Barrier function methods 418\rangle + \equiv
               T addt (const matrix \langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle \& x)
2547
2548
                  \mathbf{T} \ result \leftarrow \mathbf{T}(0):
2549
                  if (fctnal) result \leftarrow fctnal \neg eval(x);
2550
2551
                     matrix\langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle \ aux;
2552
                     fct \neg eval(x, aux);
2553
                     for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq aux.rows(); ++i) result += aux(i);
2554
2555
2556
                  has_t \leftarrow true;
                  return result;
2557
2558
               }
```

```
422. \langle \text{Barrier function methods 418} \rangle + \equiv \text{void } delt(\text{void}) \{ has\_t \leftarrow false; \}
```

**423.** Barrier functions are used in optimization problems in order to deal with constraints. To each constraint we have an associated dual variable. This is what happens: we will want to solve the problem

minimize 
$$f_0(x)$$
  
subject to  $f_i(x) < 0$ 

and we will sequentially solve

2559

2560

2561

minimize 
$$\mu f_0(x) + \sum \phi(f_i(x))$$

for various values of  $\mu$ . For each of these values, the solution of the second problem will also satisfy  $\nabla f_0(x) + \sum \lambda_i \nabla f_i(x) = 0$  for some  $\lambda_i$  that depends on the particular barrier function used. But if  $x^*$  satisfies that equality, it is a minimizer for the Lagrangian with the same  $\lambda_i$ , that is,  $\lambda_i$  are feasible dual variables and can provide a lower bound on the optimal value. It is clear that the  $\lambda_i$  will be dependent on  $\mu$ , but the barrier function doesn't know its value. What we do then is to return  $\mu \lambda_i$ , which is independent of  $\mu$ .

```
\langle \text{ Barrier function methods } 418 \rangle + \equiv  virtual T dual(\text{const matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \text{unstructured}, \text{dense} \rangle \&) \leftarrow 0;
```

**424.** On other ocasious it will be useful to get the value of the dual variable times the function itself, and it is sometimes much cheaper to compute this value (see, for example, the log barrier function). The same above remarks with respect to  $\mu$  are valid here, that is, the function should return  $\mu \lambda_i f(x)$ .

```
\langle \text{ Barrier function methods } 418 \rangle + \equiv  virtual T dual\_times\_f(\text{const matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \text{unstructured}, \text{dense} \rangle \&) \leftarrow 0;
```

(2, 41201 4004 40120 401000 401

```
425. The log barrier function. Perhaps the most common, its value is -\log(-f(x)). /* Empty, waiting for export */
```

```
426.
                     \langle barrier/log.h 426 \rangle \equiv
            #ifndef __MATH_LOG_BARRIER__
2562
            #define __MATH_LOG_BARRIER__
2563
            #include <math/barrierbase.h>
2564
               namespace math {
2565
                  namespace barrier
2566
2567
                     template\langle class T \rangle \ classlog:public \ base\langle T \rangle
2568
2569
                        \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ aux, \ jac;
2570
                        \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ dense\_aux;
2571
                        \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse} \rangle \ sparse\_aux;
2572
                     public:
2573
2574
                         (Log barrier methods 427)
2575
2576
2577
2578
            #endif
2579
```

```
\langle \text{Log barrier methods } 427 \rangle \equiv
               \log(\text{functional}::\text{base}\langle \mathbf{T}\rangle*newf) \{ f(newf); \}
2580
               log(function :: base(T) * newf) \{ f(newf); \}
2581
           See also sections 428, 429, 430, and 431.
```

This code is used in section 426.

Remember that we have to take into account that an auxiliary variable may be present. In that case, we first get the value of t, resize x and get the value and the gradient of the function. Resizing is not a big burden on performance because its optimized so that normally no memory allocation is necessary.

```
\langle \text{Log barrier methods } 427 \rangle + \equiv
              T eval(const\ matrix \langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle \& x)
2582
2583
                 T result \leftarrow 0, t \leftarrow 0;
2584
                \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ X \leftarrow x; \ /* \text{We may resize } x. \ */
2585
                if (has_t) {
2586
                   t \leftarrow X(X.rows());
2587
                   X.resize(X.rows()-1,1);
2588
2589
                if (fctnal) {
2590
                   result \leftarrow fctnal \neg eval(X) - t;
2591
                   if (result \ge 0) throw error::domain();
2592
                   return - :: log(-result);
2593
2594
                fct \neg eval(X, aux);
2595
                 for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq aux.rows(); ++i) {
2596
                   if (aux(i) - t \ge 0) throw error::domain();
2597
                   result = :: \log(t - aux(i));
2598
2599
                return result;
2600
              }
2601
          429. For the logarithm, the dual variable is -1/(\mu f(x)), so we return -1/f(x).
          \langle \text{Log barrier methods } 427 \rangle + \equiv
              T dual(const\ matrix\langle \mathbf{T}, unstructured, dense) & x) { return <math>-1/eval(x); }
2602
              T \ dual\_times\_f(const \ matrix \langle T, unstructured, dense \rangle \&) \{ return \ T(-1.0); \}
2603
```

function we have the sum  $-\sum_{i} (\nabla f_i)/f_i$ .  $\langle \text{Log barrier methods } 427 \rangle + \equiv$  $\operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \& \operatorname{grad}(\operatorname{const} \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle$ 2604 &x, matrix  $\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle$  & dest) 2605 **T**  $t \leftarrow 0$ : 2606  $\mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ X \leftarrow x; \ /* \text{We may resize } x. \ */$ 2607 **if** (has\_t) { 2608  $t \leftarrow X(X.rows());$ 2609 X.resize(X.rows()-1,1);2610 2611 2612 **if** (fctnal) {  $fctnal \neg grad(X, dest);$ 2613 2614 **if** (has\_t) { dest.resize(X.rows()+1,1);2615  $dest.entry(dest.rows()) \leftarrow \mathbf{T}(-1);$ 2616 2617  $dest /= t - fctnal \neg eval(X);$ 2618 return dest; 2619 2620  $fct \neg eval(X, aux);$ 2621  $fct \rightarrow jacobian(X, dest);$ 2622 **if** (has\_t) { 2623 dest.resize(dest.rows(), dest.cols() + 1);2624  $dest.subm(1, dest.rows(), dest.cols()) \leftarrow \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle (dest.rows(), 1, \mathbf{T}(-1));$ 2625 2626 for (index  $i \leftarrow 1$ ;  $i \neq aux.rows()$ ; ++i) { 2627 dest.subm(i, i, 1, dest.cols()) /= t - aux(i);2628 if  $(i \neq 1)$  dest.subm(1, 1, 1, dest.cols()) += dest.subm(i, i, 1, dest.cols());2629 2630  $dest \leftarrow transpose(dest.subm(1, 1, 1, dest.cols()));$ 2631 return dest; 2632 2633 **431.** Finally the Hessian: for a functional we have  $\nabla^2 - \log(-f) = (\nabla f \nabla^T f)/f^2 - (\nabla f)^2/f$ .  $\langle \text{Log barrier methods } 427 \rangle + \equiv$  $\operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle \& hess(\operatorname{const} \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle$ 2634 &x, matrix  $\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \& dest \rangle$ 2635 #define hess\_aux dense\_aux 2636 2637 ⟨ Compute Hessian for log barrier 432⟩; #undef hess\_aux 2638 2639  $\operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{symmetric}, \operatorname{sparse}\rangle \ \& hess(\operatorname{const} \ \operatorname{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \operatorname{unstructured}, \operatorname{dense}\rangle$ 2640 &x, matrix  $\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{symmetric}, \mathbf{sparse} \rangle \& dest \rangle$ 2641 2642 #define hess\_aux sparse\_aux (Compute Hessian for log barrier 432); 2643 #undef  $hess\_aux$ 2644 2645 }

**430.** Now to the gradient: for a functional f we have  $\nabla - \log(-f) = -(\nabla f)/f$ . By our definition for a

```
432.
                   \langle Compute Hessian for log barrier 432\rangle \equiv
             \mathbf{T} \ t \leftarrow 0;
2646
             \mathbf{matrix}\langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ X \leftarrow x;
                                                                        /* We may resize x. */
2647
             if (has_t) {
2648
                t \leftarrow X(X.rows());
2649
                X.resize(X.rows()-1,1);
2650
2651
2652
              if (fctnal) {
                T fval \leftarrow fctnal \neg eval(X) - t;
2653
                fctnal \neg grad(X, aux);
2654
                fctnal \rightarrow hess(X, dest);
2655
                if (has_t) {
2656
2657
                   aux.resize(aux.rows()+1,1);
                   dest.resize(dest.rows() + 1, dest.rows() + 1);
2658
                   aux.entry(aux.rows()) \leftarrow \mathbf{T}(-1);
2659
                   for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq dest.cols(); ++i) {
2660
                      dest.entry(dest.rows(),i) \leftarrow 0;
2661
                      dest.entry(i, dest.cols()) \leftarrow 0;
2662
2663
2664
                 aux /= fval;
2665
                dest /= -fval;
2666
                dest += outerp(aux, \&hess\_aux);
2667
                return dest;
2668
2669
              dest.init(X.rows() + (has_t?1:0), X.rows() + (has_t?1:0));
2670
              dest.fillwith(0);
2671
             fct \neg eval(X, aux);
2672
             fct \rightarrow jacobian(X, jac);
2673
             if (has_t) {
2674
                jac.resize(jac.rows(), jac.cols() + 1);
2675
                jac.subm(1, jac.rows(), jac.cols()) \leftarrow \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle (jac.rows(), 1, \mathbf{T}(-1));
2676
2677
              for (index i \leftarrow 1; i \leq aux.rows(); ++i) {
2678
                jac.subm(i, i, 1, jac.cols()) /= aux(i) - t;
2679
2680
                fct \rightarrow hess(X, hess\_aux, i);
                if (has_t) dest.subm(1, dest.rows() - 1, 1, dest.cols() - 1) = (hess_aux /= t - aux(i));
2681
                else dest = (hess_aux /= aux(i));
2682
                 dest += outerp(jac.subm(i, i, 1, jac.cols()), \&hess\_aux);
2683
2684
             return dest;
2685
          This code is used in section 431.
```

**433.** Sequential unconstrained minimization. function defined, we are ready to tackle our main problem, namely

minimize 
$$f_0(x)$$
  
subject to  $f_i(x) \prec 0$ ,  $i = 1, ..., p$   
 $g_i(x) = 0$ ,  $i = 1, ..., q$ .

The method used to solve this problem is to minimize, for increasing values of t, the functional

$$\mu f_0(x) + \sum \phi_i(x),$$

where  $\phi_i$  are barrier functions related to the inequality constraints. The equality constraints are taken care by the search direction function — the method doesn't do anything to enforce them. The algorithms that work this way are called *Sequential Unconstrained Minimization Techniques*, or SUMT for brevity.

```
/* Empty, waiting for export */
```

```
\langle \mathtt{sumt.h} \quad 434 \rangle \equiv
        434.
         #ifndef __MATH_SUMT__
2686
2687
         #define __MATH_SUMT__
         #include <vector>
2688
         #include <math/fmin.h>
2689
         #include <math/functional/linear.h>
2690
         #include <math/functional/gaxpy.h>
2691
2692
         #include <math/barrier/log.h>
         #include <math/linesearchbase.h>
2693
           namespace math {
2694
             ⟨SUMT functions 435⟩;
2695
           }
2696
2697
         #endif
```

435. The arguments for the function are as follows: first we have the objective functional and a list of barrier functions. If the objective functional is zero, a feasibility problem will be solved. We have to enforce that the list is actually of barrier functions because we'll need information about dual variables in order to determine that our solution is precise enough, to detect infeasibility and so on. Next, the user provides an initial point, and line minimization and search direction algorithms. The last parameters are the absolute and relative precisions, followed by a pointer to a function that gets as arguments the current phase, the value of the objective function (primal) and the dual slack.

```
\langle SUMT \text{ functions } 435 \rangle \equiv
              template\langle class T \rangle
2698
              void sumt (functional::base\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle * obj, vector\langle \mathbf{barrier} :: \mathbf{base} \langle \mathbf{T} \rangle * \rangle \& barrier\_functions, matrix\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle,
2699
                               unstructured, dense \&x, linesearch::base\langle T \rangle * line, searchdir::base\langle T \rangle *dir, T
                               abstol, T reltol, void(*disp)(int, double, double) \leftarrow 0)
2700
           \#\mathbf{ifdef} __MATH_DEBUG__
2701
                             cout \ll "[math]:_sumt_begins.\n";
2702
           #endif
2703
                             \mathbf{T} mu;
2704
                             functional::linear\langle \mathbf{T} \rangle f;
2705
                             typedef typename vector \langle barrier :: base \langle T \rangle * \rangle :: iterator sumt_iterator;
2706
                             (Build unconstrained objective function 436);
2707
                             bool initial\_point\_is\_feasible \leftarrow true;
2708
2709
                             for (sumt_iterator i \leftarrow barrier\_functions.begin();
                                    i \neq barrier\_functions.end() \land initial\_point\_is\_feasible; ++i)
                                try {
2710
                                   (*i) \rightarrow eval(x);
2711
2712
                             catch(error::domain)
2713
2714
                                initial\_point\_is\_feasible \leftarrow false;
2715
2716
                             if (\neg initial\_point\_is\_feasible) {
2717
                                \langle \text{SUMT Phase one } 438 \rangle;
2718
2719
                             \langle \text{SUMT Phase two 441} \rangle;
2720
2721
           #ifdef __MATH_DEBUG__
                             cout \ll "[math]: \_sumt\_ends. \n";
2722
           #endif
2723
2724
          This code is used in section 434.
          436. Before doing anything we build the functional we'll minimize. We use the linear functional, which
          has provision for weighting.
          \langle Build unconstrained objective function 436\rangle \equiv
              f.add(obj);
2725
              for (sumt_iterator i \leftarrow barrier\_functions.begin(); i \neq barrier\_functions.end(); ++i) f.add(*i);
2726
          This code is used in section 435.
```

**438.** Ok. Now that we don't have a feasible point, we modify the problem so it becomes feasible. The standard way to do that is to modify all constraints of the form f(x) < 0 to f(x) < t, where t is an auxiliary variable. The *addt* function of barrier functions update the constraint and returns the minimum value of t necessary in order for the constraint to be feasible with the x provided. At the end of the loop we know that  $aux\_var$  will be positive (the problem was infeasible), so we can multiply it by two in order to obtain an interior point.

```
\langle \text{SUMT Phase one } 438 \rangle \equiv

T aux\_var \leftarrow 0;

for (sumt_iterator i \leftarrow barrier\_functions.begin(); i \neq barrier\_functions.end(); ++i)

aux\_var \leftarrow max(aux\_var, (*i) \neg addt(x));

aux\_var \leftarrow aux\_var + aux\_var;

See also sections 439 and 440.

This code is used in section 435.
```

**439.** By now we have an interior feasible point for the augmented system. What we have to do is to build the initial point vector accordingly and to build the unconstrained function to be minimized.

```
\langle \text{SUMT Phase one } 438 \rangle +\equiv
2730 x.resize(x.rows()+1,1);
2731 x.entry(x.rows()) \leftarrow aux\_var;
2732 \mathbf{matrix} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ phasei\_cost(x.rows(),1);
2733 phasei\_cost.entry(x.rows()) \leftarrow 1.0;
2734 \mathbf{functional} :: \mathbf{gaxpy} \langle \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{unstructured}, \mathbf{dense} \rangle \ phasei(phasei\_cost, 0.0);
2735 f.set\_term(0, \&phasei);
```

We now try to find a feasible point for the original problem. We don't have to go all the way, just enough so that the final value of t is not too close to zero, otherwise the initial point for phase II will be barely feasible and numerical problems could arise. If we find the global optimum and t > 0, then the problem is infeasible. We also compute the Lagrange dual function in order to test for infeasibility. The value of the Lagrange dual function depends on the barrier functions being used.

```
\langle \text{SUMT Phase one } 438 \rangle + \equiv
2736
                                          mu \leftarrow 1;
2737
                                          T cost \leftarrow 2 * abstol;
                                          \textbf{T} \ lagrange \leftarrow 0; \ \textbf{while} \ (cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1) \ \{ \ f.set\_weight(0, mu); \ \textbf{try} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ \{ cost - lagrange \geq abstol \land x(x.rows()) > -0.1 \} \ 
2738
                                                                        x \leftarrow fmin(\&f, x, line, dir, abstol, reltol, 0.0); \} catch(error::maxiterations e)
2739
                                           cost \leftarrow x(x.rows());
2740
                                           lagrange \leftarrow cost;
2741
                                          for (int i \leftarrow 1; i \neq f.size(); ++i)
2742
                                                lagrange += static\_cast \langle barrier :: base \langle T \rangle * \rangle (f.get\_term(i)) \neg dual\_times\_f(x)/mu;
                                         if (disp) disp(1, cost, cost - lagrange);
2743
2744
                                         if (lagrange > 0) throw error::infeasible();
                                           mu \leftarrow mu * 50; \}
2745
                                         if (x(x.rows()) \ge 0) throw error::infeasible();
2746
                                          x.resize(x.rows()-1,1);
2747
                                          for (sumt_iterator i \leftarrow barrier\_functions.begin(); i \neq barrier\_functions.end(); ++i) (*i)-delt();
2748
                                                        Ready we are for phase II. We have to restore the original cost function that was overwritten in phase
                               I. After that, we proceed almost exactly as in phase I.
                               \langle \text{SUMT Phase two 441} \rangle \equiv
```

```
/* It was a feasibility problem. */
2749
            if (\neg obj) return;
             f.set\_term(0, obj);
2750
2751
            bool stop \leftarrow false;
             mu \leftarrow 1; while (\neg stop) \{ f.set\_weight(0, mu); x \leftarrow fmin(\&f, x, line, dir, abstol, reltol, 0.0) \};
2752
            \mathbf{T} \ cost \leftarrow obj \neg eval(x);
2753
            \mathbf{T} \ slack \leftarrow 0;
2754
            for (int i \leftarrow 1; i \neq f.size(); ++i)
2755
              slack = static\_cast \langle barrier :: base \langle T \rangle * \rangle (f.get\_term(i)) \neg dual\_times\_f(x)/mu;
            if (disp) disp(2, cost, slack);
2756
2757
            mu \leftarrow mu * 50;
2758
             stop \leftarrow true;
          #ifdef __MATH_DEBUG
2759
2760
             cout \ll "[math]:";
             2761
                 '\n';
2762
          #endif
            if (abstol) stop \leftarrow (slack \leq abstol);
2763
            if (reltol \land cost \land stop) stop \leftarrow (fabs(slack/cost) \leq reltol);
2764
2765
```

This code is used in section 435.

**442. Index.** Here is a cross-reference table for MATH. Underlined entries correspond to where the identifier was declared.

```
alpha: 381, 382, 384.
__MATH__: <u>3</u>.
__MATH_ALGEBRA__: <u>118</u>.
                                                        assign: 165.
__MATH_BACKTRACKING_LINESEARCH__:
                                                        At: 233, 234, 235.
__MATH_BARRIER__: <u>416</u>.
                                                        atxmul: 128, 228, 231, 235, 294.
__MATH_BISECTION__: 374.
                                                        aux: 106, 127, 128, 131, 132, 194, 243, 278, 279,
__MATH_CHOLESKY__:
                                                            <u>291</u>, 294, 295, 296, <u>302</u>, 303, 305, <u>310</u>, 311,
__MATH_DEBUG: 441.
                                                            313, 321, 322, 330, 331, 349, 351, 359, 360,
\verb|__MATH_DEBUG__: 384, 385, 401, 403, 408, 435. |
                                                            <u>368</u>, 369, <u>421</u>, <u>426</u>, 428, 430, 432.
__MATH_DET__: 243.
                                                        aux_var: 438, 439.
__MATH_ENTROPY_FUNCTIONAL__: 324.
                                                        auxdense: 339, 340.
__MATH_ERF_FUNCTIONAL__: 343.
                                                        auxgrad: 339, 341.
__MATH_EXP_FUNCTIONAL_: 353.
                                                        auxhess: 340, 341.
__MATH_EYE__: <u>238</u>.
                                                        auxsparse: 339, 340.
__MATH_FMIN__: 412.
                                                        auxvec: 337, 338, 341.
__MATH_FN__: 258.
                                                        axmul: 127, 286.
\_MATH_FSTREAM\_: 154.
                                                        ay: 252, 253, 254, 255, 265, 266, 267, 268.
__MATH_FUNCTION__: 245.
                                                        B: 202, 203, 215, 216, 229, 253, 266.
\_MATH_GAXPY_FUNCTION__: 251.
                                                        b: 253, 266, 382.
__MATH_GAXPY_FUNCTIONAL__: 264.
                                                        backtracking: 381, 382.
__MATH_INSANE_DEBUG__: 24, 36, 53.
                                                        backtracking::minimize: 383, 384.
__MATH_LINEAR_FUNCTIONAL__: 271.
                                                        backtracking\_infty: 381, 385.
__MATH_LINESEARCH__: 371.
                                                        backup: 80.
__MATH_LOG_BARRIER__: 426.
                                                        barrier: <u>416</u>, <u>426</u>, 435, 440, 441.
__MATH_LOG_FUNCTIONAL__: 362.
                                                        barrier::log::grad:
                                                                             430.
__MATH_LU__: <u>197</u>.
                                                        barrier::log::hess:
                                                                             431.
__MATH_NORM2ERR_FUNCTIONAL__: 290.
                                                        barrier::addt: 438.
__MATH_ONES__: <u>240</u>.
                                                        barrier::delt: 440.
__MATH_POWER_FUNCTIONAL__: 315.
                                                        barrier_functions: <u>435</u>, 436, 438, 440.
__MATH_PROD_FUNCTIONAL_: 298.
                                                        base: 245, 246, 251, 258, 259, 264, 271, 272, 273,
__MATH_QR__: 225.
                                                            275, 283, 290, 291, 292, 298, 299, 307, 308,
__MATH_QUADRATIC_FUNCTIONAL__: 283.
                                                            315, 316, 324, 325, 333, 334, 343, 344, 353,
__MATH_RATIO_FUNCTIONAL__: <u>307</u>.
                                                            354, 362, 363, 371, 372, 374, 376, 377, 378,
__MATH_RELATIVE_ENTROPY_FUNCTIONAL__: 333.
                                                            381, 383, 384, 387, 388, 390, 391, 393, 395,
__MATH_SEARCHDIR_EQUALITY__: 397.
                                                            397, 398, 399, 403, 405, 408, 412, 416, 417,
__MATH_SEARCHDIR_EQUALITY_NEWTON__:
                                                            <u>418</u>, 426, 427, 435, 440, 441.
__MATH_SEARCHDIR_GRADIENT__: 390.
                                                        Bblock: 231, 235.
__MATH_SEARCHDIR_NEWTON__: 393.
                                                        bee: 252, 253, 265, 266, 267.
__MATH_SEARCHDIRBASE__: <u>387</u>.
                                                        begin: 140, 205, 209, 276, 277, 279, 281, 435,
__MATH_SPARSE__: <u>136</u>.
                                                            436, 438, 440.
\_MATH_SUMT\_: 434.
                                                        beta: <u>134</u>, <u>226</u>, 227, 228, <u>381</u>, 382, 384, 385.
__MATH_SYMMETRIC__: <u>147</u>.
                                                        binary: 158, 159, 183, 184.
A: 127, 128, 129, 130, 134, 199, 202, 203, 205,
                                                        bisection: 374, 375, 378.
    209, 212, 215, 216, 218, 221, 222, 223, 226,
                                                        bisection::minimize: 376, 377.
    229, 243, 253, 266, 401, 406.
                                                        bisection\_infty: 374, 379.
a: <u>122</u>, <u>253</u>, <u>266</u>, <u>382</u>, <u>409</u>.
Ablock: \underline{228}.
                                                        c\_str: 180, 191.
                                                        Char: 161, 168, 188, 192
abs: 197, 200.
                                                        character: 219.
abstol: 412, 414, 435, 440, 441.
                                                        cholesky: 211, 395.
add: 273, 436.
addt: 420, 421, 438.
                                                        col: <u>58, 59, 61, 62, 63, 64, 69, 71, 91, 142, 143, 150</u>
```

cols: 18, 19, 24, 26, 30, 32, 33, 35, 36, 39, 44, 46,47, 51, <u>76, 77, 79, 80, 86, 87, 89, 90, 94, 96, 98</u> 99, 101, 102, 104, 105, 108, 115, <u>116</u>, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 140, 144, 149, 162, 165, 167, 170, 175, 190, 191, 194, 199, 202, 206, 212, 215, 219, 226, 228, 229, 238, 240, 401, 408, 409, 430, 432. col1: 85, 92, 93.col2: 85, 92, 93. complex: 166, 169, 170, 189, 193, 194. copyfrom: 40, 43, 46, 47, 50, 52, 254, 287. cost: 440, 441. cout: 24, 36, 53, 384, 385, 401, 403, 408, 435, 441. data: 28, 29, 30, 32, 33, 48, 52, 55, 56, 61, 64, 80.  $data\_size$ : 175. decomp:  $\underline{400}$ , 401, 403. decompose: 199, 203, 205, 209, 212, 216, 218, 221, 222, 223, 226, 230, 233, 243, 401. delt: 420, 422, 440. dense: 10, 12, 26, 29, 30, 33, 48, 52, 55, 60, 79, 80, 83, 116, 140, 205, 209, 218, 221, 222, 223, 226, 229, 231, 235, 247, 248, 249, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 260, 261, 262, 267, 268, 269, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 318, 320, 321, 322, 327, 329, 330, 331, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 346, 348, 349, 350, 356, 358, 359, 360, 365, 367, 368, 369, 372, 376, 377, 378, 383, 384, 388, 391, 395, 403, 408, 412, 413, 421, 423, 424, 426, 428, 429, 430, 431, 432, 435, 439. dense::destroy: 55, 56. dense::get: 64. **dense**::init: 30, 32, 116. dense::memory: 75. dense::resize: 79.dense::set: 61.  $dense\_aux: 349, 350, 426, 431.$ dest:  $\underline{127}$ ,  $\underline{128}$ ,  $\underline{131}$ ,  $\underline{132}$ ,  $\underline{133}$ ,  $\underline{161}$ ,  $\underline{166}$ , 167,  $\underline{169}$ , 170, <u>238</u>, <u>247</u>, <u>248</u>, <u>249</u>, <u>254</u>, <u>255</u>, <u>256</u>, <u>261</u>, <u>262</u>, 268, 269, 279, 281, 287, 288, 294, 295, 296, 303, 305, 311, 313, 320, 322, 329, 331, 338, 340, 341, 348, 350, 351, 358, 360, 367, 369, 388, <u>391</u>, <u>395</u>, <u>403</u>, <u>408</u>, <u>430</u>, <u>431</u>, 432. destroy: 55, 56. det: 8, 243. detach: 57, 58, 72, 73, 74, 76. determinant: 243.dgetrf: 205.dimension: 9, 77, 86, 99, 101, 102, 104, 116, 121,

122, 123, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 130, 133, 134.

dir: 372, 376, 377, 378, 379, 383, 384, 385, 388. <u>391</u>, <u>395</u>, <u>403</u>, <u>408</u>, <u>413</u>, <u>435</u>, 440, 441. dirf: 398, 399, 401, 403. dirnorm: 378.disp: 412, 413, 435, 440, 441. domain: 9, 322, 327, 329, 331, 336, 338, 341, 365, 379, 385, 428, 435, 437. dot: 123, 124, 125, 126, 130, 132, 227, 231, 235, 267, 286, 293, 384. Double:  $\underline{168}$ ,  $\underline{192}$ . double\_precision: 205, 218, 222. dpotrf: 222.dpptrf: 218.dual: 423, 429.dual\_times\_f: 424, 429, 440, 441. e: 243, 379, 385, 395, 408, 440. elem: 273.**element**: <u>65</u>, 66, <u>68</u>, <u>69</u>, 71, 81, 106. element:: $\leftarrow$ : 70. element::value: 107. element\_type: <u>10, 11, 13, 16, 26, 28, 30, 33,</u> 34, 35, 36, 48, 52, 58, 59, 61, 62, 63, 64, <u>67</u>, 70, 75, 83, 87, 91, 95, 97, 98, 100, 103, 106, 107, 123, 124, 125, 126, 134, 272, 273, 299, 300, 308, 309, 316, 317, 325, 326, 334, 335, 344, 345, 354, 355, 363, 364. elements: 28, 29, 30, 33, 48, 56, 75, 80, 138, 140, 141, 142, 143, <u>272</u>, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 279, 281. elment: 273.end: 140, 142, 143, 276, 277, 279, 281, 435, 436, 438, 440. entr: 324, 326. entry: 71, 94, 98, 101, 104, 108, 127, 128, 131, 132, 133, 201, 202, 213, 214, 215, 227, 231, 232, 234, 235, 238, 401, 403, 408, 430, 432, 439. equality: 397, 399, 401. equalty: 405. erase: 142, 276. erf: 343, 345, 346. **error**: 5, 7, 25, 51, 52, 54, 68, 85, 86, 99, 101, 102, 104, 116, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 130, 133, 134, 149, 167, 170, 173, 180, 199, 201, 202, 207, 212, 213, 215, 219, 220, 232, 234, 243, 322, 327, 329, 331, 336, 338, 341, 365, 378. 379, 384, 385, 395, 408, 428, 435, 440. eval: 247, 254, 260, 267, 277, 286, 293, 294, 295, 296, <u>301</u>, 303, 305, <u>309</u>, 311, 313, <u>318</u>, 320, 322 327, 329, 331, 336, 338, 341, 346, 348, 351, 356, 358, 360, 365, 367, 369, 378, 379, 384, 385, 420, 421, 428, 429, 430, 432, 435, 441. **exp**: 348, 351, <u>353</u>, <u>355</u>, 356.

exponent: 316, 317, 318, 320, 322.  $extra\_component$ : 403. eye: 237, 238. F: 291. f: 292, 299, 308, 316, 325, 334, 344, 354, 363,376, 378, 383, 388, 391, 395, 399, 403, 408, 412, 418, 435. fabs: 378, 414, 441. false: 41, 59, 64, 112, 150, 408, 409, 413, 418, 422, 435, 441.  $fast\_assignment$ : 40, 41, 42, 43. fct: 417, 418, 421, 428, 430, 432. fctnal: 417, 418, 421, 428, 430, 432. fd: 157, 182. **fheader**: <u>162</u>, 164, 165, 167, 170, 173, 174, 175, 180.  $file\_flag: 165.$ filerr: 9, 167, 170. fillwith: 34, 35, 36, 256, 269, 279, 281, 322, 401, 403, 432. find: 142, 143. finish: 202, 203, 215, 216, 403. finite: 201, 202, 213, 215, 232, 234, 365, 379, 385. first: 112, 275, 277, 279, 281. fmin: 412, 440, 441. fortran: 205, 206, 209, 218, 219, 221, 222, 223. ftreshold: 384, 385. func: 377, 378, 379, 384, 385. function: 245, 251, 291, 292, 417, 418, 427. function::base::grad: 248. function::base::hess: 249. function::gaxpy::A: 253.function::gaxpy::b: 253. function::gaxpy::eval: 254. function::gaxpy::hess: 256. function::gaxpy::jacobian: 255. function::eval: 293, 294, 295, 296, 428, 430, 432. function::hess: 295, 296, 432. function:: jacobian: 294, 295, 296, 430, 432. functional: 258, 264, 271, 283, 290, 298, 307, 315, 324, 333, 343, 353, 362, 372, 376, 377, 378, 383, 384, 388, 391, 395, 403, 408, 412, 416, 417, 418, 427, 435, 439. functional::base::grad: 261. functional::base::hess: 262. functional:: $gaxpy::A: \underline{266}$ . functional::gaxpy::b: 266. functional::gaxpy::grad: 268. functional::gaxpy::hess:

functional::norm2err::eval:

functional::norm2err::qrad:

functional::norm2err::hess:

293.

294.

295, 296.

functional::quadratic::eval: 286.functional::quadratic::grad: functional::quadratic::hess: 288.functional::eval: 277, 384, 385, 428, 430, 432, 435. functional::grad: 279, 383, 413, 414, 430, 432. functional::hess: 281, 432. fval: 291, 293, 294, 295, 296, 336, 338, 341, 384, 385, 432. 299, 308, 334. garbage: 175.qatxpy: 130.gaxpy: 129, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 263, 264, 265, 266, 285, 287, 439. generic: 5, 7, 9, 25, 51, 52, 54, 68, 85, 173, 180, 207, 220. generic::message: 8. get: 59, 62, 63, 64, 86, 87, 91, 94, 95, 96, 97, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 107, 115, 122, 129, 130, 134, 143, 161, 165, 168, 175, 200, 201, 202, 212, 213, 214, 215, 227, 232, 234, 408. get\_term: 273, 275, 440, 441.  $qet\_weight: 273, 275.$ goodbit: 165, 167, 170, 173, 180. grad: 261, 268, 279, 287, 294, 303, 305, 311, 313, 320, 322, 329, 331, 338, 341, 348, 351, 358, 360 367, 369, 383, 391, 395, 408, 413, 414, 430, 432. gradient: 390. gtol: 412, 413, 414. *qtreshold*: 384, 385. qval: 336, 338, 341.  $g\theta$ : 376, 383, 384. H: 291, 406.has\_t: 407, 408, 409, 418, 420, 421, 422, 428, 430, 432. HAVE\_LIBLAPACK: 217. Hdense: 280, 281, 304, 305, 312, 313, 321, 322. 330, 331, 359, 360, 368, 369. header: 164, 165, 167, 170, 173, 174, 175, 180. hess: 249, 256, 262, 269, 281, 288, 295, 296, 305, 313, 322, 331, 340, 341, 350, 351, 360, 369, 394, 395, 408, 431, 432.  $hess\_aux: 350, 351, 431, 432.$ Hsparse: 280, 281, 304, 305, 312, 313, 321, 322, 330, 331, 359, 360, 368, 369. HUGE\_VAL: 374, 381. *i*: 33, 35, 44, 52, 66, 80, 86, 87, 89, 90, 94, 96, 98, 99, 101, 102, 104, 105, 108, 115, 122, 123, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 142, 143, 161, 165, 167, 170, 188, 190, 191, 194, 200, 201, 202, 208, 214, 215, 232, 234, 238,

243, 249, 273, 275, 277, 279, 281, 295, 296,

linear: 271, 273, 276, 435, 436.

linesearch: 371, 374, 381, 412, 435.

less: 110, 138.

375, 384, 385, 401, 403, 408, 414, 421, 428, <u>430</u>, <u>432</u>, <u>435</u>, <u>436</u>, <u>438</u>, <u>440</u>, <u>441</u>. iflag: 162, 164, 165, 167, 170, 175, 190, 191, 194. **ifstream**: 155, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 165, 166, 169, 173, 175, 177, 179, 185. **ifstream**::open: 159. ifstream::skip: 172. **ifstream**:: $skip\_data$ : 174. ifstream::skipto: 176, 178. imag: 194.in: 158, 159, 184. index: 4, 17, 18, 19, 24, 26, 27, 28, 30, 32, 33, 35. 36, 38, 39, 44, 52, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 66, 69, 71, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 84, 85, 86, 87, 89, 90. 91, 92, 93, 94, 96, 98, 99, 101, 102, 104, 105, 108, 110, 115, 116, 122, 123, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 140, 142, 143, 144, 149, 150, 190, 194, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 205, 208, 209, 212, 213, 214, 215, 226, 229, 231, 232, 234, 235, 238, 240, 243, 249, 256, 295, 296, 384, 385, 400, 401, 403, 407, 408, 414, 421, 428, 430, 432. infeasible: 9, 440. init: 30, 32, 33, 38, 39, 44, 48, 76, 79, 80, 89, 116, 167, 170, 261, 269, 432.  $initial\_point\_is\_feasible: 435.$ inner: 202, 215, 232, 234.  $inner\_iter: 378.$ insert: 140.instances: 22, 37, 39, 43, 46, 53, 57. integer: 206, 219. internal\_matrix\_type: 83, 84, 85, 86, 90. ios: 158, 159, 183, 184. ipart: 167, 170, 194. iter: 384, 413. iterator: 272, 277, 279, 281, 435. *i1*: 84, 85, 86, 87, 90, 91, 93, 98, 101, 104. *i2*: <u>84</u>, 85, 86, 87, 90. j: 35, 44, 66, 80, 86, 87, 89, 90, 94, 96, 98, 99, 101,<u>102</u>, <u>104</u>, <u>105</u>, <u>108</u>, <u>115</u>, <u>122</u>, <u>127</u>, <u>128</u>, <u>129</u>, <u>130</u>, 131, 132, 133, 134, 167, 170, 190, 194, 201, 202, 213, 214, 215, 226, 231, 232, 234, 249, 401, 408. jac: 426, 432. jacobian: 248, 255, 294, 295, 296, 430, 432. *j1*: <u>84</u>, 85, 86, 87, 90, 91, 93, 98, 101, 104. *j2*: <u>84</u>, 85, 86, 87, 90. k: 108, 127, 128, 168, 192, 199, 202, 212, 215, 232, 234, 235. l: 229.  $lagrange: \underline{440}.$ LAPACK: 204.

linesearch::bisection::minimize: 376. linesearch::minimize: 413. log: 327, 329, 331, 336, 338, 341, <u>362</u>, <u>364</u>, 365, 426, 427, 428. Long: 161, 188.  $lsearch: \underline{412}, 413.$ lu: 197, 243, 395, 401, 403, 408. lu::decompose: 401. **lu**::finish: 403. M: 44, 81, 406m: 127, 128, 134, 206, 219, 229, 382.M\_PI: 348, 351. map: 110, 138. mat: 69, 85, 86, 89, 90. math: 3, 4, 41, 110, 111, 112, 118, 136, 138, 139, 142, 143, <u>147</u>, 149, 150, <u>154</u>, 161, 165, 167, 170, 173, 175, 177, 179, 180, 186, 188, 190, 194, 197, 211, 225, 238, 240, 243, 245, 251, <u>258</u>, <u>264</u>, <u>271</u>, <u>283</u>, <u>290</u>, <u>298</u>, <u>307</u>, <u>315</u>, <u>324</u>, <u>333</u>, <u>343</u>, <u>353</u>, <u>362</u>, <u>371</u>, <u>374</u>, <u>381</u>, <u>387</u>, <u>390</u>, <u>393</u>, <u>397</u>, <u>405</u>, <u>412</u>, <u>416</u>, <u>426</u>, <u>434</u>. matrix: 12, 16, 17, 18, 23, 24, 35, 36, 37, 39, 43, 44, 45, 53, 65, 82, 83, 89, 105, 109, 116, 119, 120, 121, 127, 128, 131, 132, 133, 166, 169, 189 193, 199, 202, 203, 205, 209, 212, 215, 216, 218, 221, 222, 223, 226, 228, 229, 231, 233, 235, 238, 240, 243, 247, 248, 249, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 260, 261, 262, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 277, 278. 279, 280, 281, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 318, 320, 321, 322, 327, 329, 330, 331, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 346, 348, 349, 350, 356, 358, 359, 360, 365, 367, 368, 369, 372, 376, 377, 378, 383, 384, 388, 391, 394, 395, 400, 401, 403, 406, 408, 409, 412, 413, 421, 423, 424, 426, 428, 429, 430, 431, 432, 435, 439. matrix::(): 62. matrix:: $\leftarrow$ :  $\underline{42}$ ,  $\underline{44}$ . matrix::\*=: 279, 281, 385. matrix:: +=: 385.matrix::/=: 430.matrix::=: 385. matrix::cols: 19, 38, 44, 46, 86, 89, 94, 96, 115, 116, 122, 123, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 226, 255, 401. matrix:: copy from: 46.matrix::detach: 57, 58, 73, 74, 76. matrix::entry: <u>71</u>, 255, 401, 430. matrix::fillwith: <u>34</u>, 36, 256, 279, 281, 401, 403, 432.

matrix::get: 62, 86, 91, 94, 96, 115. matrix::init: 38, 44, 76, 89, 256, 432.

matrix::numnonzeros: 115.

 $matrix::rep: \underline{74}, 116.$ 

**matrix**::resize: <u>76</u>, 256, 279, 281, 401, 403, 428, 430, 432.

**matrix**::rows: <u>19</u>, 38, 44, 46, 86, 89, 94, 96, 115, 116, 122, 123, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 130,

 $131,\ 132,\ 226,\ 256,\ 279,\ 281,\ 295,\ 296,\ 401,$ 

403, 414, 428, 430, 432.

**matrix**::set: 44, <u>58</u>, 70, 86, 89, 90, 91, 94, 96.

matrix::storg: <u>73</u>, 116.

matrix::subm: 92, 93, 401, 403, 430, 432.

matrix::swaprows: 108.

matrix\_name: <u>178</u>, <u>179</u>, 180, <u>181</u>, 186, 191.

 $matrix\_simple\_template\colon \ \ \underline{12}, \ 13, \ 35, \ 39, \ 43, \ 105,$ 

109, 119, 120, 121, 127, 128, 131, 132, 133, 166, 169, 189, 193, 212, 238, 240, 243, 251, 264, 397.

 $matrix\_template: \underline{44}, 45.$ 

**matrix\_type**: <u>16,</u> 37, 42, 43, 44, 46, 65, 66, 67, 69, 71, <u>83,</u> 88, 89, 94, 96, 99, 101, 102, 104.

max: 85, 92, 93, 438.

max\_cols: 28, 29, 33, 52, 80.

max\_rows: 28, 29, 33, 52, 80.

maxiter: 374, 375, 378, 381, 382, 384, 412, 413.

maxiterations: 9, 384, 440.

memcpy: 31, 48, 52.

memory: 75, 205, 209, 218, 221, 222, 223.

memset: 30, 31.

 $message: \underline{8}.$ 

min: 206, 208, 238.

 $minimize \colon \ \, \underline{372}, \, \underline{376}, \, \underline{377}, \, \underline{378}, \, \underline{383}, \, \underline{384}, \, 413.$ 

mode: <u>158</u>, <u>159</u>, <u>183</u>, <u>184</u>, 218, <u>219</u>, 221, 222, 223.

msg: 7.

mu: 227, 435, 440, 441.

*n*: 127, 128, 133, 134, 199, 202, 206, 212, 215, 219, 229.

name:  $\underline{158}$ ,  $\underline{159}$ ,  $\underline{162}$ , 165, 180,  $\underline{183}$ ,  $\underline{184}$ ,  $\underline{185}$ ,  $\underline{186}$ . name\_length:  $\underline{165}$ .

 $new_e: \underline{317}.$ 

 $new_{-}f: 300, 309, 317, 326, 335, 345, 355, 364.$ 

 $new_{-}g: \ \underline{300}, \ \underline{309}, \ \underline{335}.$ 

newa: 401.

newf: 292, 378, 379, 399, 418, 427.

 $\begin{array}{ll} newp: & \underline{285}. \\ newP: & \underline{285}. \end{array}$ 

 $newpi: \frac{285}{285}$ .

**newton**: 393, 405.

newy: 292.

**nonpositivedef**: 9, 212, 220, 395. **nonsquare**: 9, 149, 199, 212, 219.

norm2: 126, 378, 414.

norm2err: 290, 292. notimplemented: 9.

nrows: 235.

num\_cols: 17, 18, 26, 28, 29, 30, 33, 38, 39,

47, 48, 52, 77, 80.

 $num\_instances: 21, 22, 26, 47, 54.$ 

 $num\_matrices: 172, 173.$ 

num\_rows: 17, 18, 26, 28, 29, 30, 33, 38, 39,

47, 48, 52, 77, 80.

number: <u>167</u>, 168, <u>170</u>, <u>190</u>, 192, <u>194</u>.

 $numnonzeros \colon \ \underline{115}.$ 

obj: 435, 436, 441.

**ofstream**: <u>181</u>, <u>182</u>, <u>183</u>, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 193.

ofstream::open: 184.

ones:  $239, \ \underline{240}.$ 

open: 158, <u>159</u>, 183, <u>184</u>.

out: 183.

 $outer\_iter: \underline{378}.$ 

outerp: <u>131</u>, 313, 322, 331, 341, 351, 360, 369, 432.

outerp\_update: <u>134</u>, 228, 231, 235.

outterp: <u>132</u>, 295, 296.

P: 285.

p: <u>127</u>, <u>128</u>, <u>285</u>.

pair: 110, 111, 112, 138, 139, 142, 143, 272.

parse\_header: 164, 165, 167, 170, 173, 180.

pee: 284, 285, 286, 287.

Pee: 284, 285, 286, 287, 288.

permutations:  $\underline{199}$ ,  $\underline{200}$ .

phasei:  $\underline{439}$ .

 $phasei\_cost: \underline{439}.$ 

 $pi: \underline{285}.$ 

 $Pi: \ \underline{284}, \ 285, \ 286.$ 

pivot: 199, 200.

pivots: 199, 200, 202, 203, 205, 206, 208, 209,

<u>243</u>, <u>400</u>, 401, 403.

 $pop\_back: 274.$ 

position: 176, 177, 179, 180.

 $pow\colon \ \ 318,\ 320,\ 322.$ 

**power**: 315, 317.

preprocess: 59, <u>60</u>, 63, 64, <u>150</u>.

**prod**: 298, 300.

prot: <u>158</u>, <u>159</u>, <u>183</u>, <u>184</u>.

 $push\_back$ : 273.

put: 188, 191, 192.

**qr**: 225.

quadratic: 283, 285.

r: 375.

rankdefficient: 9, 232, 234.

ratio: 307, 309, 373, 374, 375, 378, 379.

rdstate: 165, 167, 170, 173, 180.

real: 194, 209, 221, 223.

relentr:  $\underline{333}$ ,  $\underline{335}$ .

reltol: 412, 414, 435, 440, 441.

rep: 74, 116.

**rep\_type**: <u>14</u>, 15, 24, 36, 39, 46, <u>50</u>, 51, 57, 74.

 $\textbf{representation:} \quad \underline{13}, \, 14, \, \underline{25}, \, \underline{26}, \, \underline{47}, \, 50, \, \underline{54}.$ 

**representation**::*cols*: <u>18</u>, 19, 47, 116.

representation::get: 62, <u>63</u>.

representation::instances: <u>22</u>, 37, 38, 43, 46, 53, 57.

representation::resize: 76, 77.

**representation**:: rows: 18, 19, 47, 116.

representation::set: 35, 58, <u>59</u>. representation::storg: 72, 73.

reshape: 18, 116.

resize: 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 127, 128, 131, 132,

133, <u>144</u>, <u>149</u>, 199, 206, 227, 230, 231, 235,

 $248,\ 256,\ 279,\ 281,\ 322,\ 401,\ 403,\ 408,\ 428,$ 

430, 432, 439, 440.

 $\begin{array}{c} \textit{result:} \quad \underline{105}, \, \underline{115}, \, \underline{119}, \, \underline{120}, \, \underline{121}, \, \underline{123}, \, \underline{124}, \, \underline{125}, \, \underline{277}, \\ \underline{286}, \, \underline{311}, \, \underline{313}, \, \underline{318}, \, \underline{320}, \, \underline{322}, \, \underline{327}, \, \underline{329}, \, \underline{331}, \, \underline{348}, \\ \underline{351}, \, \underline{365}, \, \underline{367}, \, \underline{369}, \, \underline{403}, \, \underline{421}, \, \underline{428}. \end{array}$ 

row: 58, 59, 61, 62, 63, 64, 69, 71, 91, 142, 143, 150.

rows: <u>18, 19, 24, 26, 30, 32, 33, 35, 36, 39, 44, 46, 47, 51, 76, 77, 79, 80, 86, 87, 89, 90, 94, 96, </u>

98, 99, 101, 102, 104, 105, 115, <u>116</u>, 121, 122,

123, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133,

134, <u>140</u>, <u>144</u>, <u>149</u>, <u>162</u>, 165, 167, 170, 175, 190, 191, 194, 199, 202, 206, 212, 215, 219, 226, 227,

191, 194, 199, 202, 200, 212, 213, 219, 220, 221, 228, 229, 231, <u>238</u>, <u>240</u>, 243, 256, 269, 279, 281,

286, 295, 296, 322, 384, 385, 401, 403, 408,

414, 421, 428, 430, 432, 439, 440.

row1: 85, 92, 93.

row2: 85, 92, 93.

same: 109.

saxpy: 122, 129, 379.

sdir: 412, 413.

searchdir: 387, 390, 393, 397, 405, 412, 435.

searchdir::base::dir: 388. searchdir::gradient::dir: 391.

searchdir::newton::dir: 395.

searchdir:: dir: 403, 413.

second: 112, 275, 277, 279, 281.

seekq: 177, 179.

set: 35, 44, 57, <u>58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 65, 70, 71, 86, 89, 90, 91, 94, 96, 99, 102, 105, 122, 129, </u>

130, 134, 142, 166, 167, 170.

 $set_A$ : 401, 409.

 $set\_term: 275, 439, 441.$ 

set\_weight: 275, 440, 441.

 $sgetrf\colon \ \ 209.$ 

sigma: 227.

singular: 9, 201, 202, 207, 213, 215, 243, 395, 408.

size: 191, 273, 275, 279, 281, 440, 441.

skip: 172, 173, 177.

skip\_data: 172, 173, <u>174</u>, <u>175</u>, 180.

skipto: <u>176</u>, <u>177</u>, <u>178</u>, <u>179</u>, 185.

slack: 441.

 $solve \colon \ \underline{203}, \ \underline{216}, \ \underline{229}, \ 395, \ 408.$ 

 $source\colon \ \ \underline{37}, \, \underline{42}, \, \underline{43}, \, \underline{44}, \, \underline{45}, \, \underline{46}, \, \underline{47}, \, \underline{48}, \, \underline{51}, \, \underline{52}, \, \underline{140},$ 

<u>188</u>, <u>189</u>, 190, 191, <u>193</u>, 194.

**sparse**: <u>137</u>, <u>140</u>, <u>141</u>, 249, 256, 262, 269, 280, 281, 288, 296, 304, 305, 312, 313, 321, 322, 330, 331,

339, 340, 349, 350, 359, 360, 368, 369, 426, 431.

 $\mathbf{sparse} :: get \colon \ \underline{143}.$ 

sparse:: resize: 144.

sparse::set:  $\underline{142}$ .

sparse\_aux: <u>349</u>, 350, <u>426</u>, 431.

spotrf: 223.
spptrf: 221.

sqrt: 118, 126, 211, 213, 227, 348, 351.

status: 205, <u>206</u>, 207, 208, 209, 218, <u>219</u>, 220, 221, 222, 223.

**std**: 155, 157, 158, 159, 170, 181, 182, 183, 184, 272.

step: 373.

stepsize: 378, 379, 384, 385.

STO: 44.

**STOA**: 44, 45.

stop:  $\underline{413}$ ,  $\underline{414}$ ,  $\underline{441}$ .

storage: 12, 14, 16, 20, 26, 35, 39, 43, 47, 50,

72, 105, 109, 119, 120, 121, 127, 128, 131, 132,

133, 138, 140, 166, 169, 189, 193, 199, 202, 203,

212, 215, 216, 226, 228, 229, 231, 233, 235, 238,

240, 243, 252, 253, 265, 266, 283, 284, 285, 290,

291, 393, 394, 400, 401, 405, 406, 409.

storage:: qet: 59, 63.

storage::resize: 77.

storage\_type: 16, 73.

storg: 72, 73, 116, 205, 209, 218, 221, 222, 223.

STR: 44.

**STRA**: 44, 45.

strcmp: 180.

string: 4, 5, 8, 162, 181.

**structure**: 12, 14, 16, 20, 26, 35, 39, 43, 47, 50,

105, 109, 119, 120, 121, 127, 128, 131, 132,

133, 166, 169, 189, 193, 212, 238, 240, 243,

252, 253, 265, 266, 401.

structure::preprocess: 59, 63.

structure::resize: 77.

 $structure_A$ : 215, 216.

**structure\_B**: 215, 216.

structure\_type: 16.

92, 105, 120, 228, 231, 235.

subm: 92, 93, 129, 130, 131, 132, 227, 228, 231, 235, 401, 430, 432.

SUBM: 81, 89.

SUBMA: 99, 102, 127, 128, 129, 130, 134.

submatrix: 81, 82, 83, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90,

**submatrix**::(): 87, 89, 90.

**submatrix**::*cols*: <u>87</u>, 89, 90, 122, 123, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132.

submatrix::get: 91.

**submatrix**::*rows*: <u>87</u>, 89, 90, 122, 123, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132.

 $\begin{array}{ll} \mathbf{submatrix} :: set : & \underline{91}. \\ \mathbf{submatrix} :: subm : & \underline{93}. \end{array}$ 

 $\begin{array}{c} \textit{submatrix\_template:} \quad \underline{81}, \ 99, \ 102, \ 122, \ 123, \ 124, \\ 125, \ 126, \ 127, \ 128, \ 129, \ 130, \ 131, \ 132, \ 133, \ 134. \end{array}$ 

**submatrix\_type**: <u>83</u>, 86, <u>88</u>, 90, 92, 93, 98, 101, 104.

**SUBMX**: 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134.

**SUBMY**: 122, 123, 124, 125, 129, 130, 133, 134.

sumt: 435.

**sumt\_iterator**: <u>435</u>, 436, 438, 440.

swap: 106, 108.

swaprows: <u>108</u>, 200, 202.

**symmetric**: <u>148</u>, <u>149</u>, <u>151</u>, 218, 221, 249, 256, 262, 269, 280, 281, 284, 285, 288, 291, 295, 296, 304, 305, 312, 313, 321, 322, 330, 331, 339, 340, 349, 350, 359, 360, 368, 369, 394, 406, 426, 431. **symmetric**::preprocess: <u>150</u>.

T: 94, 96.

t: <u>375</u>, <u>428</u>, <u>430</u>, <u>432</u>.

**TA**: 44, 45. *tdot*: 124, 129.

the Matrix: 66, 68, 69, 70, 84, 85, 86, 87, 90, 91, 93, 95, 97, 98, 100, 101, 103, 104, 107.

the Message: 5, 7, 8.

theStorage: <u>20</u>, 26, 47, 51, 54, 59, 63, 72, 77. theStructure: <u>20</u>, 26, 47, 51, 54, 59, 63, 77.

tluser: 313.

tol: 374, 375, 378.

transpose: <u>105</u>, 233, 401, 430. tricky: <u>161</u>, <u>168</u>, <u>188</u>, <u>192</u>.

true: 40, 60, 112, 150, 162, 408, 414, 421, 435, 441.

ttdot: 125, 131. type: 162, 165.

unboundedbelow: 9, 378.

**unstructured**: <u>11</u>, 12, 26, <u>27</u>, <u>49</u>, 60, 81, 83, 116, 199, 202, 203, 205, 209, 222, 223, 226, 228, 229, 231, 233, 235, 243, 247, 248, 249, 252, 253, 254,

255, 256, 260, 261, 262, 267, 268, 269, 277, 278, 279, 281, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 318, 320, 321, 322, 327, 329, 330, 331, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 346, 348, 349, 350, 356, 358, 359, 360, 365, 367, 368, 369, 372, 376, 377, 378, 383, 384, 388, 391, 395, 400, 403, 406, 408, 409, 412, 413, 421, 423, 424, 426, 428, 429, 430, 431, 432, 435, 439.

unstructured::preprocess: 60.

unstructured::resize: 78.

v: 226, 231, 235.

val: 95, 97, 100, 103.

**vector**: 199, 202, 203, 205, 209, 243, 272, 273, 400, 435.

**void**: 435.

v1: 227.

w: 226, 229.

weight:  $\underline{273}$ .

 $X: \underline{428}, \underline{430}, \underline{432}.$ 

x: 105, 106, 109, 111, 112, 116, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 227, 247, 248, 249, 254, 255, 256, 260, 261, 262, 267, 268, 269, 277, 279, 281, 286, 287, 288, 293, 294, 295, 296, 301, 303, 305, 309, 311, 313, 318, 320, 322, 327, 329, 331, 336, 338, 340, 346, 348, 350, 356, 358, 360, 365, 367, 369, 378, 384, 391, 395, 403, 408,

<u>412</u>, <u>421</u>, <u>428</u>, <u>429</u>, <u>430</u>, <u>431</u>, <u>435</u>.

xi: 388.

xrows: 400, 401, 403, 407, 408, 409.

xua: 304, 305, 312, 313.

xyyx: 133, 305, 313.

 $x\theta$ : 372, 376, 377, 378, 383, 384, 385, 413, 414. Y: 291.

y:  $\frac{106}{125}$ ,  $\frac{109}{121}$ ,  $\frac{111}{112}$ ,  $\frac{119}{120}$ ,  $\frac{120}{121}$ ,  $\frac{122}{122}$ ,  $\frac{123}{124}$ ,  $\frac{125}{129}$ ,  $\frac{130}{133}$ ,  $\frac{134}{134}$ ,  $\frac{286}{1292}$ .

```
⟨ Algebraic operations 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134 ⟩ Used in section 118.
(Apply Cholesky transformation 214) Used in section 212.
(Apply Gauss transformation 201) Used in section 199.
(Apply Householder transformation 228) Used in section 226.
(Backtracking line search methods 382, 383, 384) Used in section 381.
(Barrier function internal variables 417, 420) Used in section 416.
 Barrier function methods 418, 421, 422, 423, 424 \ Used in section 416.
 Basic algebraic operations 105 \rangle Used in section 3.
 Basic definitions 4, 5, 40, 82 Used in section 3.
 Big definitions 112 \rangle Used in section 2.
 Bisection line search methods 375, 376, 377 \ Used in section 374.
 Build L^T row 213 \rangle Used in section 212.
 Build unconstrained objective function 436 \ Used in section 435.
 Check for lapack LU errors 207 \ Used in sections 205 and 209.
 Check lapack Cholesky errors 220 \ Used in sections 218, 221, 222, and 223.
 Cholesky lapack interface 218, 221, 222, 223 \ Used in section 217.
 Cholesky prototypes 212, 215, 216, 217 Used in section 211.
 Compute Hessian for log barrier 432 \ Used in section 431.
 Compute Hessian for erf functional 351 \rangle Used in section 350.
 Compute Householder vector for column j 227 \ Used in section 226.
 Compute next function value for backtracking 385 \ Used in section 384.
 Compute next function value for bisection 379 \( \) Used in section 378.
 Compute number of permutations and store it in status 208 Used in sections 205 and 209.
(Dense storage internal variables 28) Used in section 10.
 Dense storage methods 29, 30, 32, 48, 52, 55, 56, 61, 64, 75, 79 \ Used in section 10.
Element definition 65 \ Used in section 3.
 Entropy of a functional class methods 326, 327, 329, 331 \ Used in section 324.
 Entropy of a functional internal variables 325, 330 \ Used in section 324.
(Equality search direction internal variables 398, 400) Used in section 397.
 Equality search direction methods 399, 401, 403 \ Used in section 397.
Error function of a functional class methods 345, 346, 348, 350 \ Used in section 343.
 Error function of a functional internal variables 344, 349 \ Used in section 343.
 Exponential of a functional class methods 355, 356, 358, 360 \ Used in section 353.
 Exponential of a functional internal variables 354, 359 \ Used in section 353.
 Function base class methods 246, 247, 248, 249 \ Used in section 245.
Functional base class methods 259, 260, 261, 262 \ Used in section 258.
 Functional minimization algorithm 413 \ Used in section 412.
 Gaxpy function class methods 253, 254, 255, 256 \ Used in section 251.
 Gaxpy function internal variables 252 \ Used in section 251.
 Gaxpy functional class methods 266, 267, 268, 269 \ Used in section 264.
 Gaxpy functional internal variables 265 \ Used in section 264.
 Generic error class methods 7, 8 \ Used in section 5.
(Get number from file, using the same tricky method as for longs 168) Used in sections 167 and 170.
Gradient search direction methods 391 \ Used in section 390.
(Include files fstream 156, 163, 171) Used in section 154.
(Include files math 6, 31, 113, 114) Used in section 3.
(Include files sparse 139) Used in section 136.
(LU lapack interface 205, 209) Used in section 204.
\langle LU \text{ prototypes } 199, 202, 203, 204 \rangle Used in section 197.
(Line search base class methods 372) Used in section 371.
(Linear combination of functionals class methods 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 279, 281) Used in section 271.
(Linear combination of functionals internal variables 272, 278, 280) Used in section 271.
```

```
(Log barrier methods 427, 428, 429, 430, 431) Used in section 426.
(Logarithm of a functional class methods 364, 365, 367, 369) Used in section 362.
(Logarithm of a functional internal variables 363, 368) Used in section 362.
(Matrix definition 12) Used in section 3.
(Matrix element internal variables 66, 67) Used in section 65.
(Matrix element methods 68, 69, 70, 95, 97, 100, 103, 107) Used in section 65.
(Matrix internal types 14, 16, 88) Used in section 12.
(Matrix internal variables 15) Used in section 12.
(Matrix methods 19, 23, 24, 34, 36, 37, 38, 42, 44, 45, 46, 53, 57, 58, 62, 71, 73, 74, 76, 89, 92, 94, 96, 99, 102, 108, 115)
    Used in section 12.
(Matrix representation definition 13) Used in section 12.
(Matrix representation internal variables 17, 20, 21, 50) Used in section 13.
(Matrix representation methods 18, 22, 25, 26, 47, 51, 54, 59, 63, 72, 77)
(Newton search direction internal variables 394) Used in section 393.
(Newton search direction methods 395) Used in section 393.
Newton with equality functions 408, 409 Used in section 405.
(Newton with equality internal variables 406, 407) Used in section 405.
 Norm-2 error functional class methods 292, 293, 294, 295, 296 Used in section 290.
(Norm-2 error functional internal variables 291) Used in section 290.
(Power of a functional class methods 317, 318, 320, 322) Used in section 315.
(Power of a functional internal variables 316, 321) Used in section 315.
(Predefined error types 9) Used in section 5.
(Prepare for lapack Cholesky 219) Used in sections 218, 221, 222, and 223.
(Prepare for lapack LU 206) Used in sections 205 and 209.
⟨Product of functionals class methods 300, 301, 303, 305⟩ Used in section 298.
(Product of functionals internal variables 299, 302, 304) Used in section 298.
(OR prototypes 226, 229) Used in section 225.
 Quadratic functional internal variables 284 \ Used in section 283.
 Quadratic functional methods 285, 286, 287, 288 \ Used in section 283.
(Ratio of functionals class methods 309, 311, 313) Used in section 307.
(Ratio of functionals internal variables 308, 310, 312) Used in section 307.
 Relative entropy functional class methods 335, 336, 338, 340 \ Used in section 333.
Relative entropy functional internal variables 334, 337, 339 Used in section 333.
SUMT Phase one 438, 439, 440 Used in section 435.
\langle SUMT Phase two 441 \rangle Used in section 435.
(SUMT functions 435) Used in section 434.
(Search direction base class methods 388) Used in section 387.
(Search for correct matrix name 180) Used in section 179.
 Search for pivot and swap rows if necessary 200 \ Used in section 199.
(Solve Q^T x = y 235) Used in section 233.
\langle \text{ Solve } Qy = b \text{ 231} \rangle Used in section 230.
\langle \text{Solve } R^T y = b \text{ 234} \rangle Used in section 233.
\langle \text{Solve } Rx = y \text{ 232} \rangle Used in section 230.
(Solve least squares problem 230) Used in section 229.
(Solve minimum norm problem 233) Used in section 229.
 Sparse storage definition 137 \( \) Used in section 136.
(Sparse storage internal variables 138) Used in section 137.
(Sparse storage methods 140, 141, 142, 143, 144) Used in section 137.
(Specializations 106, 109, 110, 111, 116) Used in section 3.
(Storage definition 10) Used in section 3.
(Structure definition 11) Used in section 3.
(Submatrix definition 81) Used in section 3.
```

```
(Submatrix internal variables 83, 84) Used in section 81.
(Submatrix methods 85, 86, 87, 90, 91, 93, 98, 101, 104) Used in section 81.
(Symmetric structure definition 148) Used in section 147.
(Symmetric structure methods 149, 150, 151) Used in section 148.
(Unstructured structure methods 27, 49, 60, 78) Used in section 11.
 Update functional minimization stop criteria 414 \rangle Used in section 413.
Write matrix header 191 Used in sections 190 and 194.
 Write number to file, using the same tricky mehtod as for longs 192 \ Used in sections 190 and 194.
(algebra.h 118)
⟨barrier/log.h 426⟩
⟨barrierbase.h 416⟩
cholesky.h 211
det.h 243
 eye.h 238
fmin.h 412\rangle
(fstream.h 154)
(function/gaxpy.h 251)
 functional/entr.h 324>
⟨functional/erf.h 343⟩
⟨functional/exp.h 353⟩
 functional/gaxpy.h 264>
 functional/linear.h 271 >
⟨functional/log.h 362⟩
⟨functional/norm2err.h 290⟩
 functional/power.h 315>
(functional/prod.h 298)
(functional/quadratic.h 283)
\langle functional/ratio.h 307 \rangle
⟨functional/relentr.h 333⟩
(functionalbase.h 258)
(functionbase.h 245)
(linesearch/backtracking.h 381)
⟨linesearch/bisection.h 374⟩
⟨linesearchbase.h 371⟩
(lu.h 197)
\langle \mathtt{math.h} \quad 3 \rangle
\langle ones.h 240 \rangle
\langle qr.h 225 \rangle
 searchdir/equality.h 397>

⟨ searchdir/equality/newton.h 405 ⟩
⟨ searchdir/gradient.h 390 ⟩
 searchdir/newton.h 393 >
⟨searchdirbase.h 387⟩
\langle \mathtt{sparse.h} \quad 136 \rangle
\langle \mathtt{sumt.h} \quad 434 \rangle
 symmetric.h 147
(bisection big definitions 378) Used in section 374.
(export-waiting big definitions 33, 35, 39, 43, 80) Used in section 3.
\langle fstream \text{ declarations } 155, 181 \rangle Used in section 154.
\langle fstream \text{ structures } 162 \rangle Used in section 154.
(ifstream methods 157, 158, 159, 160, 164, 166, 167, 169, 170, 172, 174, 176, 178) Used in section 155.
(ofstream methods 182, 183, 184, 185, 187, 189, 190, 193, 194) Used in section 181.
```

 $\langle$  **relentr** Hessian 341 $\rangle$  Used in section 340.

## The MATH Library

(Version alpha 3-22-2002)

Se	ction	Page
Introduction	1	1
Basic definitions	2	2
Matrix basics	. 10	5
Creating and copying a matrix	. 21	8
Destroying a matrix	. 53	14
Setting and getting elements	. 57	15
Resizing	. 76	19
Submatrices	. 81	21
Basic algebraic operations	. 94	25
Basic specializations and utilities	106	28
Algebraic operations	117	30
The sparse storage	135	36
The symmetric structure	146	38
File streams: input	153	40
File streams: output	181	45
The LU decomposition	196	48
Solving a linear system		50
Interfacing with LAPACK		51
The Cholesky decomposition		53
Solving a linear system		54 55
The QR decomposition		57
Solving linear equations		59
Least squares		59
Minimum norm	233	60
Matrix creation functions		62
Eye		62
Ones		63
Matrix functions		64 64
Functions		65
The gaxpy function	250	66

MATH LIBRARY (Version alpha 3-22-2002)	TABLE OF CONTENTS	; (-)	1
Functionals		257	68
The gaxpy functional		263	69
The linear combination of functionals		270	70
The quadratic functional		282	73
The norm-2 error		289	75
The product of two functionals		297	77
The ratio of two functionals		306	79
The power functional		314	81
The entropy of a functional		323	83
Relative entropy			85
The Error Function		342	88
The exponential of a functional			90
The logarithm of a functional		361	91
Line Searching		370	94
The bisection algorithm		373	94
Backtracking			97
Computing a search direction		386	100
The gradient direction			100
The Newton direction			101
Enforcing equality constraints			103
Newton direction with equality constraints		404	105
Optimization algorithms		410	109
Functional minimization			109
Barrier functions			111
The log barrier function			113
Sequential unconstrained minimization			117
Index			121

## Copyright © 1998–2000 César A. R. Crusius

Permission is granted to make and distribute verbatim copies of this document provided that the copyright notice and this permission notice are preserved on all copies.

Permission is granted to copy and distribute modified versions of this document under the conditions for verbatim copying, provided that the entire resulting derived work is given a different name and distributed under the terms of a permission notice identical to this one.